# WAVE INDUCED HYDRODYNAMIC COMPLEXITY AND TRANSPORT IN THE NEARSHORE

by

Sangyoung Son

A Dissertation Presented to the FACULTY OF THE USC GRADUATE SCHOOL UNIVERSITY OF SOUTHERN CALIFORNIA In Partial Fulfillment of the Requirements for the Degree DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY (CIVIL ENGINEERING)

August 2012

Copyright 2012

Sangyoung Son

# Dedication

To my lovely wife Bohyang Kim,

and our beautiful children, Jaiden Jiho Son and Irene Jiin Son

### Acknowledgements

I would like to express my deepest appreciation to Dr. Patrick Lynett for his guidance, support, patience and trust throughout my doctoral studies. It has truly been an honor and a pleasure to work with him for past four years. I also would like to thank my committee members, Dr. Jiin-Jen Lee, Dr. Larry Redekopp, Dr. Carter Wellford, Dr. Hung Leung Wong for their valuable comments on my works.

I would not forget to thank Dr. Scott Socolofsky, Dr. James Kaihatu, Dr. Jennifer Irish and Dr. Kuang-An Chang for their concerns and advices during the PhD program at Texas A&M University. Indeed, I missed Aggie life a lot since I moved out. I am also sincerely grateful to Dr. Moo-Hyun Kim and ANMCCF families who always pray for our family. In LA, we used to recollect all the joyful moments shared with them.

Most importantly, none of this work would have been possible without unconditional support from my family. I would like to thank my parents and parents-in-law for giving me love, care and encouragement during my study. I also deeply appreciate my beloved children, Jaiden Jiho Son and Irene Jiin Son who always welcome me with a big smile at the door. Please forgive your dad, who was often busy with the study. I promise that I will play with you more in the future. And finally, I would like to thank Bohyang Kim for being my wife, my friend, my comfort, and my sanity. I love you so much.

# Table of Contents

Dedica	tion	ii
Acknow	vledgements	iii
List of	Tables	vii
List of	Figures	viii
Abstra	ct	xii
Chapte	r 1 Introduction	1
1.1	Motivation	1
1.2	Objectives of Study	5
1.3	Organization	6
Chapte	r 2 Nested and Multi-Physics Modeling of Long Waves	8
2.1	Introduction	9
2.2	Shallow Water Equation Model	12
	2.2.1 Governing Physics	13
	2.2.2 Numerical Scheme	14
2.3	Boussinesq Equation Model	17
	2.3.1 Governing Physics	17
	2.3.2 Numerical Scheme	18
2.4	Preliminary Discussion for Mismatches between Models	20
	2.4.1 Mismatch in Physics	21
	2.4.2 Mismatch in Numerics	22
2.5	Coupling Approach	24
	2.5.1 Coupling Method	24
	2.5.2 Coupling with Different Grid Size	29
	2.5.3 Special Numerical Interface Treatment	30
2.6	Validation	32
	2.6.1 Gaussian Hump Simulation	32
	2.6.2 Physical and Numerical Setup	33
	2.6.3 Simulation Results	37
2.7	Tsunami Wave Fission Simulation	42

2.8	2004 Sumatra Tsunami Simulation	
	2.8.1 Simulation Setup	
	2.8.2 Results and Discussion	
2.9	Summary	
Chapte	er 3 Interaction of Shallow Water Waves with Weakly Sheared	
	Currents of Arbitrary Profile 58	
3.1	Introduction	
3.2	Brief Review on Wave-Current Interactions	
	3.2.1 Waves over the Current	
	3.2.2 Currents under the Waves	
3.3	Boussinesq Equations for Waves and Currents	
	3.3.1 Non-dimensionalized Governing Physics and Boundary Conditions 65	
	3.3.2 Reynolds Stresses Under Combined Wave-Current Flow 68	
	3.3.3 Subgrid Scale Turbulent Closure Model	
	3.3.4 Depth-Integrated Momentum Equations for Waves and Currents . 70	
	3.3.5 Depth-Integrated Continuity Equation for Waves and Currents 78	
	3.3.6 Modulation of Dispersion Properties by Currents	
	3.3.7 Free parameter $(b^x, b^y)$	
3.4	Validation	
	3.4.1 Waves over Uniform or Linearly-varying Currents	
	3.4.2 Waves and Turbulent Currents with Bed Roughness 90	
	3.4.3 Bichromatic Waves and Uniform Currents in a Vayring Depth 95	
•• =	00	
3.5	Summary	
3.5 Chapte	Summary	
3.5 Chapte	Summary	
3.5 Chapte	Summary	
3.5 Chapte 4.1	Summary       99         er 4       A Depth-Integrated Model for Free Surface Waves Propagating over Fluids with Weak Vertical and Horizontal Density Variation         104         Introduction       105	
3.5 Chapte 4.1 4.2	Summary       99         er 4       A Depth-Integrated Model for Free Surface Waves Propagating over Fluids with Weak Vertical and Horizontal Density Variation         104         Introduction       105         Mathematical Formulation       109	
3.5 Chapto 4.1 4.2	Summary       99         er 4       A Depth-Integrated Model for Free Surface Waves Propagating over Fluids with Weak Vertical and Horizontal Density Variation         104       104         Introduction       105         Mathematical Formulation       109         4.2.1       Governing Physics and Boundary Conditions       109	
3.5 Chapte 4.1 4.2	Summary       99         er 4       A Depth-Integrated Model for Free Surface Waves Propagating over Fluids with Weak Vertical and Horizontal Density Variation       104         Introduction       105         Mathematical Formulation       109         4.2.1       Governing Physics and Boundary Conditions       109         4.2.2       Derivation of Boussinesq-type Equations for Dispersive Waves over	
3.5 Chapto 4.1 4.2	Summary       99         er 4       A Depth-Integrated Model for Free Surface Waves Propagating over Fluids with Weak Vertical and Horizontal Density Variation       104         Introduction       104         Introduction       105         Mathematical Formulation       109         4.2.1       Governing Physics and Boundary Conditions       109         4.2.2       Derivation of Boussinesq-type Equations for Dispersive Waves over Variable Density Fluid       112	
3.5 Chapto 4.1 4.2 4.3	Summary       99         er 4       A Depth-Integrated Model for Free Surface Waves Propagating over Fluids with Weak Vertical and Horizontal Density Variation       104         Introduction       105         Mathematical Formulation       105         4.2.1       Governing Physics and Boundary Conditions       109         4.2.2       Derivation of Boussinesq-type Equations for Dispersive Waves over Variable Density Fluid       112         Limiting Cases of Derived Model       121	
3.5 Chapte 4.1 4.2 4.3	Summary       99         er 4       A Depth-Integrated Model for Free Surface Waves Propagating over Fluids with Weak Vertical and Horizontal Density Variation       104         Introduction       105         Mathematical Formulation       109         4.2.1       Governing Physics and Boundary Conditions       109         4.2.2       Derivation of Boussinesq-type Equations for Dispersive Waves over Variable Density Fluid       112         Limiting Cases of Derived Model       121         4.3.1       Linear, Inviscid Equations       121	
3.5 Chapto 4.1 4.2 4.3	Summary       99         er 4       A Depth-Integrated Model for Free Surface Waves Propagating over Fluids with Weak Vertical and Horizontal Density Variation       104         Introduction       105         Mathematical Formulation       105         4.2.1       Governing Physics and Boundary Conditions       109         4.2.2       Derivation of Boussinesq-type Equations for Dispersive Waves over Variable Density Fluid       112         Limiting Cases of Derived Model       121         4.3.1       Linear, Inviscid Equations       121         4.3.2       First-Order Nonlinear, Inviscid Equations       122	
3.5 Chapto 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.3	Summary99er 4A Depth-Integrated Model for Free Surface Waves Propagating over Fluids with Weak Vertical and Horizontal Density VariationIntroduction104Introduction105Mathematical Formulation1094.2.1Governing Physics and Boundary Conditions1094.2.2Derivation of Boussinesq-type Equations for Dispersive Waves over Variable Density Fluid112Limiting Cases of Derived Model1214.3.1Linear, Inviscid Equations1214.3.2First-Order Nonlinear, Inviscid Equations123Model Validation123	
3.5 Chapte 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4	Summary99er 4A Depth-Integrated Model for Free Surface Waves Propagating over Fluids with Weak Vertical and Horizontal Density Variation104IntroductionIntroduction105Mathematical Formulation1094.2.1Governing Physics and Boundary Conditions1094.2.2Derivation of Boussinesq-type Equations for Dispersive Waves over Variable Density Fluid112Limiting Cases of Derived Model4.3.1Linear, Inviscid Equations1214.3.2First-Order Nonlinear, Inviscid Equations1234.4.1Horizontally Varying Fluid Density - Pneumatic Breakwater123	
3.5 Chapte 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4	Summary99er 4A Depth-Integrated Model for Free Surface Waves Propagating over Fluids with Weak Vertical and Horizontal Density Variation104Introduction105Mathematical Formulation1094.2.1Governing Physics and Boundary Conditions1094.2.2Derivation of Boussinesq-type Equations for Dispersive Waves over Variable Density Fluid112Limiting Cases of Derived Model1214.3.1Linear, Inviscid Equations1214.3.2First-Order Nonlinear, Inviscid Equations122Model Validation1234.4.1Horizontally Varying Fluid Density - Pneumatic Breakwater1234.4.2Waves Excited by Internal Motion: Linear Surface Waves128	
3.5 Chapto 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4	Summary       99         er 4       A Depth-Integrated Model for Free Surface Waves Propagating over Fluids with Weak Vertical and Horizontal Density Variation       104         Introduction       105         Mathematical Formulation       109         4.2.1       Governing Physics and Boundary Conditions       109         4.2.2       Derivation of Boussinesq-type Equations for Dispersive Waves over Variable Density Fluid       112         Limiting Cases of Derived Model       121         4.3.1       Linear, Inviscid Equations       121         4.3.2       First-Order Nonlinear, Inviscid Equations       122         Model Validation       123         4.4.1       Horizontally Varying Fluid Density - Pneumatic Breakwater       123         4.4.2       Waves Excited by Internal Motion: Linear Surface Waves       128	
3.5 Chapte 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 4.5	Summary       99         er 4       A Depth-Integrated Model for Free Surface Waves Propagating over Fluids with Weak Vertical and Horizontal Density Variation       104         Introduction       105         Mathematical Formulation       109         4.2.1       Governing Physics and Boundary Conditions       109         4.2.2       Derivation of Boussinesq-type Equations for Dispersive Waves over Variable Density Fluid       112         Limiting Cases of Derived Model       121         4.3.1       Linear, Inviscid Equations       122         Model Validation       123         4.4.1       Horizontally Varying Fluid Density - Pneumatic Breakwater       123         4.4.2       Waves Excited by Internal Motion: Linear Surface Waves       128         4.4.3       Waves Excited by Internal Motion: Nonlinear Surface Waves       135	
3.5 Chapto 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 4.5	Summary       99         er 4       A Depth-Integrated Model for Free Surface Waves Propagating over Fluids with Weak Vertical and Horizontal Density Variation       104         Introduction       105         Mathematical Formulation       109         4.2.1       Governing Physics and Boundary Conditions       109         4.2.2       Derivation of Boussinesq-type Equations for Dispersive Waves over Variable Density Fluid       112         Limiting Cases of Derived Model       121         4.3.1       Linear, Inviscid Equations       121         4.3.2       First-Order Nonlinear, Inviscid Equations       123         4.4.1       Horizontally Varying Fluid Density - Pneumatic Breakwater       123         4.4.3       Waves Excited by Internal Motion: Linear Surface Waves       128         4.4.3       Waves Excited by Internal Motion: Nonlinear Surface Waves       135	
3.5 Chapte 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.3 4.4 4.5 Chapte	Summary       99         er 4       A Depth-Integrated Model for Free Surface Waves Propagating over Fluids with Weak Vertical and Horizontal Density Variation       104         Introduction       105         Mathematical Formulation       109         4.2.1       Governing Physics and Boundary Conditions       109         4.2.2       Derivation of Boussinesq-type Equations for Dispersive Waves over Variable Density Fluid       112         Limiting Cases of Derived Model       121         4.3.1       Linear, Inviscid Equations       121         4.3.2       First-Order Nonlinear, Inviscid Equations       122         Model Validation       123         4.4.1       Horizontally Varying Fluid Density - Pneumatic Breakwater       123         4.4.3       Waves Excited by Internal Motion: Linear Surface Waves       135         Summary       140	
3.5 Chapte 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.3 4.4 4.5 Chapte 5.1	Summary       99         er 4       A Depth-Integrated Model for Free Surface Waves Propagating over Fluids with Weak Vertical and Horizontal Density Variation         104       104         Introduction       105         Mathematical Formulation       109         4.2.1       Governing Physics and Boundary Conditions       109         4.2.2       Derivation of Boussinesq-type Equations for Dispersive Waves over Variable Density Fluid       112         Limiting Cases of Derived Model       121         4.3.1       Linear, Inviscid Equations       122         Model Validation       123         4.4.1       Horizontally Varying Fluid Density - Pneumatic Breakwater       123         4.4.2       Waves Excited by Internal Motion: Linear Surface Waves       135         Summary       140         er 5       Conclusions and Future Works       142         Conclusions       142	
3.5 Chapte 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.3 4.4 4.5 Chapte 5.1 5.2	Summary99er 4A Depth-Integrated Model for Free Surface Waves Propagating over Fluids with Weak Vertical and Horizontal Density Variation104Introduction104Introduction105Mathematical Formulation1094.2.1Governing Physics and Boundary Conditions1094.2.2Derivation of Boussinesq-type Equations for Dispersive Waves over Variable Density Fluid112Limiting Cases of Derived Model1214.3.1Linear, Inviscid Equations122Model Validation1234.4.1Horizontally Varying Fluid Density - Pneumatic Breakwater1234.4.2Waves Excited by Internal Motion: Linear Surface Waves135Summary140er 5Conclusions and Future Works142Future Works144	

Bib	licore	nhu
DID	nogra	(piiy

Appendix A           Numerical Scheme of COMCOT	147
Appendix B Second order terms in Boussinesq Equation	149
Appendix C Variables in Numerical Scheme of Boussinesq Model	152
Appendix D Derivation of Momentum Equation in Wave-Current Model	155
Appendix E         Numerical Scheme in Wave-Current Model         E.1 Finite Volume Method         E.2 Time Marching	$160 \\ 161 \\ 162$
Appendix F Derivation of Momentum Equation of Boussinesq Model for Variable Density Fluid Flows	169
Appendix G         Numerical Formulation of Boussinesq Model for Variable Density Fluid Flows .         G.1 Time Integration	173 174 179
Appendix H Second-order Sub- and Super-harmonic Solution in Two-layer Fluids	183

146

# List of Tables

2.1	Simulation Setup	36
2.2	Grid setup for 2004 Sumatra Tsunami simulation	50
2.3	Fault parameters for 2004 Sumatra earthquake	51
3.1	Wave and Current Conditions in Swan(1990)'s Experiments $\ldots$ .	85
3.2	Wave and current characteristics in Kemp & Simons (1982, 1983) $\ .$	91
3.3	Bichromatic waves and current characteristics in Dong et al. (2009) $\ .$	97
4.1	Experiment conditions of pneumatic breakwater (Zhang et al.(2010)) $\ .$	125
4.2	Parameters for simplified density fields of bubbly area	127
4.3	Experiment conditions of internal waves in two-layer (Umeyama(2002))	134

# List of Figures

1.1	A huge whirlpool generated by 2011 Tohoku Tsunami traps a boat in port of Oarai, Japan (Courtesy of Reuters/Kyodo)	4
2.1	Finite difference stencils for COMCOT	15
2.2	Finite volume stencil for Boussinesq Model	21
2.3	Schematic drawing of coupled grid system("Zone A" is specified for Figure 2.4)	25
2.4	Data exchange schematic between COMCOT and Boussinesq grids (De- tailed view of "Zone A" in Figure 2.3)	26
2.5	Flowchart of coupled COMCOT-Boussinesq model calculations $\ . \ . \ .$ .	27
2.6	Grid system for different grid sizes between COMCOT and Boussinesq Model (Lower-left corner section only)	31
2.7	Physical concept of Gaussian hump simulations; top: front view, bottom: plan view	34
2.8	Definition sketch for $L^*$	35
2.9	Temporal variation of free surface elevation at the center of the wave basin $(r = 1, \epsilon = 0.001, Cr = 0.01 \text{ and } e = 10) \dots \dots$	38
2.10	) Snapshots of water surface at 3 different times $(r = 1, \epsilon = 1, Cr = 0.01 \text{ and} e = 10) \dots \dots$	39
2.11	Calculation of standard deviation when $r = 2, \epsilon = 0.001, Cr = 0.01$ and $e = 10 \ldots $	41
2.12	2 Error distribution according to stability index, $\gamma$ , with fitted curve	43

2.13	Definition sketch of a long wave propagating onto a shallow shelf (LSW:Linear Shallow Water Equation, NLSW: Nonlinear Shallow Water Equation)	45
2.14	Time histories of water surface elevations at 4 different locations. In the left half of the figure are shown the coupled model results (solid line: Boussinesq model (Layer 4, dashed line: Measured data), while the right half of the figure shows the COMCOT only results at the same times (solid line: Nonlinear Shallow Water Equation model (Layer 3), dashed line: Measured data)	47
2.15	Initial surface elevation of 2004 Sumatra tsunami	48
2.16	Surface elevation (m) in all layers at time=730min. The lower row shows the output from Layer 5, the Boussinesq model, of the free surface elevation (left) and vorticity (1/s) (right).	52
2.17	Vorticity $(1/s)$ evolution inside Oman Salalah harbor at nine different times	53
2.18	Comparison of vorticity (1/s) evolution by Boussinesq-coupled model (left) and COMCOT-only (right)	55
3.1	Definition sketch of long wave propagation over underlying currents of arbitrary profile	67
3.2	Measured shear currents in the absence of waves in Swan(1990); (a) CASE2F; (b) CASE2A	86
3.3	Comparison of wave records under following, uniform current (Case 1F) between experiment(o) and numerical solution(-): surface elevation(a) and oscillating velocities at $z=-0.1$ m(b); at $z=-0.2$ m(c); at $z=-0.3$ m(d)	87
3.4	Comparison of wave records under opposing, uniform current (Case 1A) between experiment(o) and numerical solution(-): surface elevation(a) and oscillating velocities at $z$ =-0.15m(b); at $z$ =-0.25m(c); at $z$ =-0.35m(d)	88
3.5	Comparison of wave records under opposing, linear shear current (Case 2A) between experiment(o) and numerical solution(-): surface elevation(a) and oscillating velocities at $z=-0.1$ m(b); at $z=-0.2$ m(c); at $z=-0.3$ m(d)	89
3.6	Comparison of maximum wave velocity under following(a) and opposing(b) linear shear current; experiment(o), numerical solution(-)	90
3.7	Mean-velocity profiles of combined waves and currents; (a)WCA1; (b)WCA3; (c)WCA4; (d)WCA5	93

3.8	Mean-velocity profiles of combined waves and currents; (a)WDR1; (b)WDR3; (c)WDR4; (d)WDR5	94
3.9	Distribution of parameter b according to radiation stress( $S_{xx}$ scaled by current bed stress( $\tau_{Cb}$ )); Fitted line is represented by solid and dashed line	96
3.10	Experimental setup of bichromatic waves under an ambient currents by Dong et al.(2009)	97
3.11	Spatial variation of ; (a)Hrms of bicromatic waves; (b)Amplitude of bound- ing long waves;(without currents)	98
3.12	Spatial variation of ; (a)Hrms of bicromatic waves; (b)Amplitude of bound- ing long waves;(following currents)	100
3.13	Spatial variation of ; (a)Hrms of bicromatic waves; (b)Amplitude of bound- ing long waves;(opposing currents)	101
3.14	Calculated amplitude spectra of bichromatic waves with and without currents	102
4.1	Sketch of long wave propagation over two-layer fluids with horizontal den- sity variation	110
4.2	Experimental setup of pneumatic breakwater (Zhang et al.(2010))	125
4.3	Simplified density field of bubbly fluids; (a)Depth-varying $\rho(z)$ (b)Depth- constant $\overline{\rho}$	126
4.4	Comparison of transmission coefficient $(K_t)$ between measurement and cal- culation; T=1.55 sec	128
4.5	Comparison of transmission coefficient $(K_t)$ between measurement and calculation; T=1.29 sec	129
4.6	Simplified two-layer system with interfacial wave $1  \ldots  \ldots  \ldots  \ldots  \ldots  \ldots  \ldots  \ldots  \ldots  $	130
4.7	Measured(solid) and approximately calculated(dashed) density profile in Umeyama(2002)	133
4.8	Measured(dashed), numerical(solid) and analytical(dot) surface elevation in CASE I	135
<sup>1</sup> Idea <sup>·</sup>	underlying the plot assumes internal-mode interfacial wave $(n^i)$ generates internal-mode sur	face

Idea underlying the plot assumes internal-mode internala wave( $\eta^s$ ), For the definition of internal-mode, see Părău and Dias(2001)

4.9	Measured(dashed), numerical(solid) and analytical(dot) surface elevation in CASE II	136
4.10	Second-order super-harmonic and sub-harmonic amplitude relative to the exact solution $(a^{\pm}/a_{exact}^{\pm})$	140

#### Abstract

In the coastal area, defined as the region between the shoreline and some offshore limit where the depth can no longer influence the waves, complex behavior of waves is anticipated due to various physical effects such as turbulence, wave-structure interaction, wave-current interaction, wave breaking and fluid-density variations. For modeling of nearshore hydrodynamics, many numerical models have been developed so far, but many of such effects are not yet considered appropriately.

In this dissertation, depth-integrated numerical models used in long wave simulation are developed for better understanding of complicated hydrodynamics at the nearshore. First, a non-dispersive shallow water equation model and dispersive Boussinesq model are two-way coupled. The fundamental purpose of the coupling effort is to develop the capability to seamlessly model long wave evolution from deep to shallow water with fine scale resolution, without the loss of locally important physics. Second, a set of depthintegrated equations describing combined wave-current flows are derived mathematically and discretized numerically. To account for the effect of turbulent interaction between waves and underlying currents with arbitrary profile, new additional stresses are introduced, which represent radiation stress of waves over the ambient current field. Finally, a numerical model for gravity waves propagating over variable density fluids is developed by allowing horizontal and vertical variation of fluid density. Throughout the derivation, density change effects appear as correction terms while the internal wave effects on the free surface waves in a two-layer system are accounted for through direct inclusion of the internal wave velocity component. For each of the studied topics, numerical tests are performed to support accuracy and applicability. Consequently, we have developed a comprehensive tool for numerical simulation of complex nearshore hydrodynamics.

#### Chapter 1

## Introduction

## 1.1 Motivation

"We will never control the furious Earth, but through our scientific understanding of its nature, we may be able to prevent tragic and costly losses" <sup>1</sup>

A series of recent gigantic disasters in the oceanic area, including the 2004 Indian tsunami and 2011 Tohoku tsunami remind us of the importance of understanding nature, especially ocean dynamics. Researchers have made great progress in developing tools for modeling and predicting the meteorological and oceanographic environments covering the immense ocean. Thinking of the lifespan of transoceanic waves, whether generated by wind stresses or other sources of energy in the deep ocean, waves travel over the ocean and reach at the shoreline after various types of physical transformations such as shoaling,

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>This quote is from *Furious Earth: The Science and Nature of Earthquakes, Volcanoes, and Tsunamis.* by Ellen J. Prager, McGraw-Hill, 1st ed., 1999

refracting, interacting with other flows or structures, and breaking, many of which occur at the nearshore region.

Therefore, it is yet challenging to model a comprehensive evolution of waves from deep ocean to the shallow coastal area without loss of accuracy in physics. Three dimensional Navier-Stokes equations will be the best choice, unless there is concern about computational resources or numerical issues. In reality, however, it seems too far from practical, since we are not capable of dealing with the complexity and multi-scale behavior without any assumptions aiming to simplify the problem. With the purpose of practical application, many numerical tools have been developed for long wave modeling with different levels of approximation. Established examples include COMCOT(Cornell Multigrid Coupled Tsunami Model), MOST(Method of Splitting Tsunami), FUNWAVE(Fully Nonlinear Wave Model), COULWAVE(Cornell University Long and Intermediate Wave Modeling Package) and others.

The majority of existing long wave models have their theoretical basis on either nondispersive shallow water equations or Boussinesq-type equations. Shallow water equation models neglect the dispersive property of waves, permitting depth-uniform velocity profiles, and a huge efficiency is gained through modeling with these 2HD(horizontal dimension) equations. Yet, it is still argued that the application of a non-dispersive model in the nearshore area seems to be insufficient for accurate representation of certain physics, since nearshore hydrodynamics may involve many complex features.

The dispersive property of intermediate waves need to be accounted for, as it can be important in the shallow regions in some circumstances. In the nearshore where the water depth is very shallow and amplitude and wavelength can become high and short, nonlinear and bathymetric interactions occur across a wide range of frequencies. The interactions among waves of various frequencies can locally generate various shorter-crested, or dispersive waves components. Thus, an application of the dispersive wave model to the nearshore environment is considered useful and needed for practical purposes.

Another complex situation occurs in coastal area when inhomogeneous types of fluid flows such as waves, currents and tides co-exist and interact with each other. Gravity waves arriving at coastal regions interact with the background current flow, which is usually driven by tides, thermocline, salinity variations and river mouth discharges. In consequence, the combined effects of waves and currents need to be considered for accurate modeling of nearshore physics such as morphodynamic changes, mixing and transport of solutes.

Freshwater and seawater are often found in estuaries in coastal regions. Thus the fluid densities are subject to change horizontally and vertically due to thermal and saline variability. This density variation will result in complex physical processes contrary to uniform density fluids. Therefore, density-variation is a primary concern in estuarine hydrodynamics. Wave-breaking, sedimentations, and wave interaction with coastal structures are worthy of mention as other interesting issues, as they often occur in nearshore area.

The wave-related, physical problems mentioned above tend to make nearshore hydrodynamics more complex than those in deep water. Sometimes, such dynamics result in unexplainable events, looking like supernatural phenomena and require dedicated considerations of the controlling physics. An excellent example can be found during the 2011



Figure 1.1: A huge whirlpool generated by 2011 Tohoku Tsunami traps a boat in port of Oarai, Japan (Courtesy of Reuters/Kyodo)

Tohoku tsunami, which created a huge whirlpool when it reached a harbour near Oarai city, Japan(see Figure 1.1).

This example describes how significantly the local physics can govern the nearshore hydrodynamics and how big their impacts are. Thus, accurate and computationally efficient modeling of nearshore hydrodynamics with consideration of physical complexities is extremely important in that imprecise prediction will cause tremendous loss of properties and sometimes threaten our lives. Thinking of the rapidly-expanding populations toward shorelines, such efforts seem to be urgently in need. Hydrodynamic complexities in the nearshore are recognized as important and so are popular topics in coastal and ocean engineering. However, comprehensive modeling of complex behavior of waves is not yet achieved and most of complexities remain unrealized in present numerical models. As Boussinesq models include nonlinearity and frequency dispersion of waves at the shallow region, other physical factors embedded in nearshore hydrodynamics can be elucidated physically and mathematically in the Boussinesq context. Thus it may be valuable to study various hydrodynamic complexities at the nearshore in this framework.

## 1.2 Objectives of Study

The main objective of this research is to introduce a set of numerical models used in long wave simulation without the loss of locally important physics in the nearshore. To this end, we extended the conventional Boussinesq-type investigations in three ways. First, a non-dispersive shallow water model and dispersive Boussinesq model will be two-way coupled to develop a seamless model for long wave evolution from deep to shallow water with fine scale resolution, without the loss of locally important physics. In such an effort, it needs to be postulated that a more physically complete attempt at long wave modeling can be achieved through the integration of a shallow water equation model with a Boussinesq-type model. The former is computationally in charge of propagation of waves in the deep ocean, while the latter can be concentrated on a specific area of interest, typically nearshore where waves are prone to high nonlinearity and local frequency dispersion. Second, a set of depth-integrated equations describing combined wave-current flows will be derived mathematically and discretized numerically. In the nearshore area, gravity waves heavily interact not only with the bottom geometry but also with the currents which are usually driven by tides, thermocline, salinity variations and river mouth discharges. To account for the effect of turbulent interaction between waves and underlying currents, additional stresses will need to be introduced to represent the intensity of turbulent interaction between waves and currents.

Finally, a numerical model for gravity waves propagating over variable density fluids will be developed by allowing horizontal and vertical variation of fluid density. Throughout the derivation, density change effects as well as internal wave effects on the free surface waves will be accounted for and will appear as correction terms to the conventional Boussinesq equations of uniform density. For each of the studied topics, numerical tests will be performed to support its accuracy and applicability.

#### **1.3** Organization

In Chapter 2, non-dispersive shallow water and dispersive, Boussinesq-type numerical models used in long wave modeling, as well as an approach to two-way couple these models together, are introduced. The two model components are briefly introduced, and the physical mismatch between the two models is examined analytically. Then, a general benchmark test has been undertaken to provide a parameter range for expected accuracy and stability of the coupled model. Finally, the model is applied to the 2004 Indian Ocean tsunami.

In Chapter 3, a set of depth-integrated equations describing combined wave-current flows is derived and validated. To account for the effect of turbulence induced by nonlinear interaction between waves and currents, additional stresses are introduced. Using a parameter b, an additional stress is defined to represent the intensity of turbulent interaction between waves and currents. An appropriate estimation on b is provided through Kemp and Simons(1982, 1983)'s experiments. Accuracy of the model is examined through three experimental data sets, which resemble various types of hydraulic situations in the nearshore.

In Chapter 4, by allowing horizontal and vertical changes of fluid-density, depthintegrated model equations for long surface waves over variable density fluid are derived mathematically and discretized numerically. Proposed model is applied to surface wave propagations over either horizontally or vertically varying density fluids for the verification.

In Chapter 5, the conclusions of the dissertation are summarized. Also included are suggestions for the future works.

#### Chapter 2

## Nested and Multi-Physics Modeling of Long Waves

In this chapter, non-dispersive shallow water and dispersive, Boussinesq-type numerical models used in long wave modeling, as well as an approach to two-way couple these models together are introduced. The fundamental purpose of the coupling effort is to develop the capability to seamlessly model long wave(e.g., tsunamis) evolution from generation to inundation with fine scale resolution, without the loss of locally important physics. The two model components are briefly introduced, and the physical mismatch between the two models is examined analytically. As coupling of numerically and physically heterogeneous models may result in undesirable errors, a general benchmark test has been undertaken to provide a parameter range for expected accuracy and stability. Long wave propagation onto a shallow shelf is simulated to validate the coupled model, examining the importance of dispersive and nonlinear effects in the nearshore area, as well as the utility of the coupled modeling system. Finally, the model is applied to the 2004 Indian Ocean tsunami. In this test, the local dynamics experienced in the Port of Salalah in Oman, as documented by Okal et al. (2006), are recreated.

#### 2.1 Introduction

As a long gravity wave propagates over a non-uniform ocean bottom, shoaling and refraction can have a transforming effect. The response of waves to bathymetric changes results in deformation of the amplitude and wavelength, permitting waves to conserve mass and momentum. Many efforts have been made to construct a relationship between wave height and water depth, and using various levels of approximation (e.g. linear waves) it is possible. For the approximation of long and intermediate length (or shallow and intermediate depth) waves, two physical characteristics of waves, nonlinearity and frequency dispersion, are generally employed.

Under a "true" long wave, frequency dispersion is negligible. This assumption yields a hydrostatic pressure field and a horizontal velocity that is uniform over depth. A tsunami is often considered a long wave. Frequency dispersion in a tsunami can be ignored when the tsunami wavelength, typically on the order of 100km in the deep ocean, is considerably larger than water depth. Therefore, the usual approach to describe tsunami evolution is to take either the linear or nonlinear shallow-water models as the governing equations. A number of computational models based on this approximation exist, and some are introduced here. MOST (Method of Splitting Tsunami) developed by Titov and Synolakis (1998) is capable of predicting wave height or inundation using a technique where twodimensional equations are split into a pair of one-dimensional equations. Liu et al.(1998), on the other hand, presented COMCOT (Cornell Multi-grid Coupled Tsunami Model) adopting the staggered leap-frog integration with an upwind scheme for the nonlinear convective terms. COMCOT can also model tsunami propagation and some nearshoredynamics such as run-up. GTM (Global Tsunami Model) was designated for assessment of tsunami hazard, inundation, mapping and prediction of the tsunami arrival time by Kowalik et al.(2005). More recently, aided by adaptive finite volume methods for wave propagation, TsunamiClaw (Conservation Laws) has been created as a work of George and LeVeque (2006). Lastly, TsunAWI uses the finite element method with the advantage of flexibility in grid generation, and was found to be comparable to the multi-grid, nested modeling approach (Harig et al., 2007).

Even though all of these models employ different numerical techniques, all solve the linear and/or nonlinear shallow water equations. Depending on the wavelength of the tsunami, however, frequency dispersion effects can be significant. Specifically, neither hydro-static pressure nor depth-constant horizontal velocity can be presumed. For transoceanic propagation of a tsunami as well as landslide-generated tsunami, the dispersive effects, estimated through the ratio of water depth to wavelength, should be included to yield more accurate results (e.g. Yoon(2002), Lynett et al.(2003), Grilli et al.(2007)). For this reason, some efforts to add the frequency dispersion effect into nondispersive models through numerical truncation error have been made(e.g. Yoon(2002), Burwell(2007)). Despite such attempts to mimic physical dispersion, it is still an attractive challenge to model tsunami with the Boussinesq or Navier-Stokes equations with the aim to, hopefully, obtain more realistic wave predictions. Corresponding examples include COULWAVE(Cornell University Long and Intermediate Wave Modeling Package) by Lynett et al.(2003), GEOWAVE, which is equipped with the FUNWAVE(Fully Nonlinear Wave Model) engine, by Grilli et al.(2007), and recent work by Saito and Furumura(2009).

The above mentioned computational models aim, of course, for accurate prediction of nearshore physics such as wave shoaling, wave-diffraction and refraction, run-up and nonlinear interactions of waves, each with their specialized advantages, e.g., small computational time of COMCOT or rigorous representation of physics in the Boussinesq model. In coastal regions, where the water depth is very shallow and amplitude and wavelength can become high and short, nonlinear and bathymetric interactions across a wide range of frequencies occur. These interactions can locally generate various shorter-crested, or dispersive waves components. A well known example is the transformation of a tsunami front into an undular bore. Thus, the nearshore is expected to be nonlinear and (possibly) dispersive, and Boussinesq model is appropriate, as addressed in some literature (e.g. Lynett(2006)). In related efforts, Kim et al.(2009) have presented a depth-integrated model for weakly dispersive, turbulent and rotational fluid flows. This approach permits the explicit inclusion of viscous effects in shallow water, coupled with the nonlinear and weakly-dispersive physics of the Boussinesq model. With accuracy, this model can simulate nonlinear and weakly dispersive nearshore dynamics, as well as large eddies generated by long waves and currents.

Here it is postulated that a more physically complete attempt at tsunami modeling can be achieved through the integration of a shallow water equation model with a Boussinesq model. COMCOT is computationally "in charge" of generation and propagation of tsunamis in the deep, open ocean, which in general will be the huge majority of a simulation domain. On the other hand, the Boussinesq effort can be concentrated on a specific area of interest, typically nearshore where waves are prone to high nonlinearity, turbulence, and local frequency dispersion.

This chapter aims to introduce a set of numerical models used in tsunami modeling, as well a method to couple them together. The fundamental purpose of the coupling effort is to develop the capability to seamlessly model tsunami evolution from generation to inundation with fine scale resolution, without the loss of locally relevant physics. In addition to this, local turbulent structures, such as eddies and gyres, generated by tsunamis in the nearshore area or around coastal structures can be studied with the coupled model.

The outline of this chapter is as follows. In the first two sections, the model components, the shallow water wave equation model (COMCOT) and the Boussinesq-type model, will be briefly introduced with their numerical scheme. Physical and numerical "mismatches" between the two models will be discussed analytically, which is followed by the coupling method given in detail. The next section is devoted to the validation of the coupled model through a benchmark test with wide-varying conditions and resulting guidance for general use. A typical problem of long wave propagation into the coast is given in following section. Finally, the presented model is applied to the 2004 Sumatra tsunami to investigate nearshore dynamics, with a particular focus on the eddies generated inside a harbor basin.

#### 2.2 Shallow Water Equation Model

As introduced above, Liu et al.(1998) presented a nested multi-grid model which has the option of using either the linear or the nonlinear shallow water equations (NLSW) with

two different types of coordinate systems, namely Cartesian or spherical. This general framework includes the effects of bottom friction as well as a special treatment for the moving shoreline. The model named COMCOT v.1.6 has been adapted here to simulate tsunami propagation across oceanic basins.

#### 2.2.1 Governing Physics

The nonlinear shallow equations including bottom frictional effects in conservative form are:

$$\frac{\partial \zeta}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial M}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial N}{\partial y} = 0 \tag{2.1}$$

$$\frac{\partial M}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left(\frac{M^2}{H}\right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left(\frac{MN}{H}\right) + gH\frac{\partial\zeta}{\partial x} + \tau_x = 0$$
(2.2)

$$\frac{\partial N}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left(\frac{MN}{H}\right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left(\frac{N^2}{H}\right) + gH\frac{\partial\zeta}{\partial y} + \tau_y = 0$$
(2.3)

in which  $\zeta$  is the surface elevation, h is the still water depth,  $H = h + \zeta$  is the total water depth, and M, N are the volume fluxes in the x and y directions, defined respectively as Hu and Hv. The bottom friction terms  $\tau_x, \tau_y$  in the momentum equations are approximated in COMCOT via Manning's formulation

$$\tau_x = \frac{gm^2}{H^{7/3}} M \left( M^2 + N^2 \right)^{1/2} \tag{2.4}$$

$$\tau_y = \frac{gm^2}{H^{7/3}} N \left( M^2 + N^2 \right)^{1/2} \tag{2.5}$$

13

where m is the Manning's relative roughness coefficient. Note that the above equation set is the nonlinear solver in COMCOT; the linear solver of course neglects the convection terms in the momentum equations, and does include the Coriolis force when solving in spherical coordinates.

#### 2.2.2 Numerical Scheme

The numerical scheme employed by COMCOT is the explicit leap-frog difference method. Nonlinear terms in the model are approximated with upwind finite differences and linear terms by two-point centered finite differences. This numerical scheme is stable and robust but is a low-order accurate method, meaning that it is susceptible to numerical dispersion and dissipation errors. The finite difference forms for the continuity and momentum equations are described in Appendix A. The finite difference stencil of this scheme is depicted in Figure 2.1, suggesting two neighboring points on each side of a calculation point are necessary for each location calculation of derivatives.

For the present study, COMCOT has been parallelized for use on shared-memory computers, such as multi-processors and/or multi-core computers. OpenMP was used for the parallelization, which is the standard method for shared-memory parallelization. The parallel model has been tested up to 8 processors, and shows a near linear speed-up (using 8 processors reduces CPU time by a factor of 1/8).

To generate the tsunami from an undersea earthquake, COMCOT uses the fault model of Okada (1985). The main assumptions of this model are a rectangular fault plane within an elastic deformation. The fault model predicts the deformation of the seafloor, which corresponds directly to the initial deformation of the ocean water free surface. There are



Figure 2.1: Finite difference stencils for COMCOT

a number of parameters which govern the fault model:

- Latitude and longitude of epicenter
- Focal depth
- Length and width of fault plane
- Dislocation
- Strike angle
- Slip angle
- Dip angle

Once the earthquake has been described with the above parameter set, COMCOT is able to propagate the initial disturbance across oceans. For propagation across deep ocean waters, COMCOT gives the option of using the linear version of the shallow water equations. This version is solved considerably faster, in the computational sense, than the nonlinear version, and can be used with confidence as long as the tsunami wave height is a very small fraction of the depth, practically less than  $1/25 \sim 1/50$  of the local depth. When this threshold is exceeded, the nonlinear version of COMCOT is required for accurate results. Generally, if runup or nearshore wave heights are needed, the nonlinear version of the model should be used.

For runup calculations, COMCOT utilizes a simple but accurate moving shoreline algorithm. The continuously sloping beach profile is approximated as a stair-stepped profile. When the water level exceeds the elevation of the "stair" above, the water floods that "step" and the shoreline moves landward (inundation). This approach has shown to re-produce analytical solutions reasonably and field data as well as any other published, shallow-water equation model.

#### 2.3 Boussinesq Equation Model

Recently, Kim et al.(2009) have presented a depth-integrated model for weakly dispersive, turbulent and rotational fluid flows. It is derived from the spatially-filtered Navier-Stokes equations in order to consider viscous effects of a turbulent fluid. Accordingly, this model includes approximated bottom-induced turbulence and thereby the associated vertical and horizontal rotational effects can be captured. In the present study, we have adopted the Boussinesq model of Kim et al.(2009) to simulate the nearshore hydrodynamics and turbulence effects such as large eddies and wakes generated in the nearshore.

#### 2.3.1 Governing Physics

The Boussinesq-type equations including turbulent viscosity and the associated horizontal and vertical vorticity terms are given in conservative form below:

$$\frac{\partial H}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial H U_{\alpha}}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial H V_{\alpha}}{\partial y} + D_c = 0$$
(2.6)

$$\frac{\partial HU_{\alpha}}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial HU_{\alpha}^2}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial HU_{\alpha}V_{\alpha}}{\partial y} + gH\frac{\partial\zeta}{\partial x} + HD_m^x + U_{\alpha}D_c = 0$$
(2.7)

17

$$\frac{\partial HV_{\alpha}}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial HU_{\alpha}V_{\alpha}}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial HV_{\alpha}^2}{\partial y} + gH\frac{\partial\zeta}{\partial y} + HD_m^y + V_{\alpha}D_c = 0$$
(2.8)

where  $U_{\alpha}$  and  $V_{\alpha}$  are the x and y component velocities at  $z_{\alpha} = -0.531h$  and  $D_m^x, D_m^y$ are 2nd order correction terms of the depth-integrated momentum equations as defined in Kim et al.(2009). Likewise  $D_c$  includes 2nd order correction terms in the continuity equation. It is noted that the dispersive, viscous, and vorticity corrections are included as these 2nd order terms. All 2nd order terms can be found in Appendix B.

#### 2.3.2 Numerical Scheme

To numerically solve the governing equations in conservative form, a highly accurate and stable model is developed. The numerical method uses a fourth-order MUSCL-TVD (Monotone Upstream-centered Schemes for Conservation Laws- Total Variation Diminishing) scheme to solve the leading order (shallow water) terms, while for the dispersive terms, a cell averaged finite volume method is implemented. For the time integration, a third order Adams-Bashforth predictor and the fourth-order Adams-Moulton corrector scheme has been used to keep numerical truncation errors small. It is noted that Boussinesq-type models such as the one solved here, which include up to third-order spatial derivatives, require a high-order solution scheme to keep the derivatives associated with the numerical truncation error at least an order below those contained in the model equations. The explicit predictor step is

$$\zeta^{n+1} = \zeta^n + \frac{\Delta t}{12} \left( 23E^n - 16E^{n-1} + 5E^{n-2} \right)$$
(2.9)

$$P^{n+1} = P^{n} + \frac{\Delta t}{12} \left( 23F^{n} - 16F^{n-1} + 5F^{n-2} \right) + 2F_{1}^{n} - 3F_{1}^{n-1} + F_{1}^{n-2} + F_{v}^{p}$$
(2.10)

$$Q^{n+1} = Q^n + \frac{\Delta t}{12} \left( 23G^n - 16G^{n-1} + 5G^{n-2} \right) + 2G_1^n - 3G_1^{n-1} + G_1^{n-2} + G_v^p$$
(2.11)

The implicit corrector step is

$$\zeta^{n+1} = \zeta^n + \frac{\Delta t}{24} \left(9E^{n+1} + 19E^n - 5E^{n-1} + E^{n-2}\right)$$
(2.12)

$$P^{n+1} = P^{n} + \frac{\Delta t}{24} \left(9F^{n+1} + 19F^{n} - 5F^{n-1} + F^{n-2}\right) + F_{1}^{n+1} - F_{1}^{n} + F_{v}^{c}$$
(2.13)

19

$$Q^{n+1} = Q^{n} + \frac{\Delta t}{24} \left(9G^{n+1} + 19G^{n} - 5G^{n-1} + G^{n-2}\right) + G_{1}^{n+1} - G_{1}^{n} + G_{v}^{c}$$
(2.14)

where P, Q are defined as

$$P = HU_{\alpha} + \frac{H}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - \zeta^{2} \right) U_{\alpha xx} + H \left( z_{\alpha} - \zeta \right) (hU_{\alpha})_{xx} - H\zeta_{x} \left\{ \zeta U_{\alpha x} + (hU_{\alpha})_{x} \right\}$$
(2.15)

$$Q = HV_{\alpha} + \frac{H}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - \zeta^{2} \right) V_{\alpha yy} + H \left( z_{\alpha} - \zeta \right) \left( hV_{\alpha} \right)_{yy} - H\zeta_{y} \left\{ \zeta V_{\alpha y} + \left( hV_{\alpha} \right)_{y} \right\}$$
(2.16)

where the superscript n denotes time level and the subscripts x and y imply derivatives in the x and y direction, respectively.  $E, F, G, F_1, G_1, F_v^p, G_v^p, F_v^c, G_v^c$  in the above equations include a number of spatially discretized terms; all can be found in Appendix C. The finite volume stencil for this scheme is displayed in Figure 2.2, which shows that 4 neighboring points are required for each local calculation.

## 2.4 Preliminary Discussion for Mismatches between Models

It is necessary to compare models in terms of both physical limitations and numerical properties, as this will provide the basic guidance for coupling. There exist two major



Figure 2.2: Finite volume stencil for Boussinesq Model

groups of errors, one from approximated equations and the other from the numerical scheme, the so-called truncation error. Prior to our coupling work, we shall thus consider the physical and numerical differences between COMCOT and the Boussinesq model, since the models, of course, have different governing equations as well as very different numerical solution schemes, which will cause a physical and numerical accuracy mismatch along the coupling interface.

#### 2.4.1 Mismatch in Physics

COMCOT, based on the shallow water equations, approximates the horizontal velocities and pressure gradient to be constant with depth, so one can ignore vertical variation of physics. On the other hand, Boussinesq-type equations allow (weak) vertical change of horizontal velocity, expressed as quadratic function of z. This allowance of vertical variation in the flow permits the model to include the effects of frequency dispersion. In addition to this, Kim et al.(2009) included viscous and rotational effects, which originate from bottom-induced stress. Both frequency dispersion and viscous effects exist as corrections to the leading order terms - the inviscid nonlinear shallow water equations. This can be seen straightforwardly by eliminating 2nd order terms in Equations (2.6), (2.7) and (2.8) and then comparing with Equations (2.1), (2.2) and (2.3). Also note that the bottom friction terms in both models are included, but in a different manner; COMCOT has ad-hoc added friction terms in the momentum equations, while the Boussinesq model has both the bottom stress and a number of additional terms resulting from an explicit inclusion of bottom stress in the derivation. Consequently, in order to avoid errors from these physical differences, dispersive and viscous effects should be sufficiently small in order for governing physics to be continuous across the model interface. In other words, physics-driven model errors can be mitigated when the local relative depth(h/L) and bottom friction along interface are small. Of course in a general, nonlinear simulation, one can not for example guarantee the minimum simulated value of L a priori, but such relations can be used as guidance for constructing a simulation.

#### 2.4.2 Mismatch in Numerics

Different numerical solution schemes will produce different output even if solving the same algebraic equations. Discretizing equations using any sort of numerical method includes an error from truncation, and such errors of course depend on the numerical scheme itself. As explained in the previous section, COMCOT and the Boussinesq model employ different types of schemes; while both are fixed grid solvers, the spatial stencils of the two schemes are very different, as are the time integration methods. Again, the Boussinesq solver is a fourth-order accurate scheme and COMCOT a second-order scheme. Since all numerical truncation errors from the Boussinesq solver are at least two orders of differentiation higher than those from the COMCOT solver, the primary numerical error will originate from the nonlinear COMCOT model. Specifically, the leading order truncation error arising from the upwind differencing can be given as:

$$Er = 0.5(1 - Cr)u\Delta x \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}$$
(2.17)

where Er is the numerical truncation error of the upwind difference and Cr is the local courant number, given as  $(\Delta t \sqrt{gh})/\Delta x$ . In general, it is not possible to ensure  $Cr \approx$ 1 in COMCOT for an arbitrary grid with variable bathymetry, and furthermore the maximum allowable Cr in the COMCOT scheme according to stability analysis is 0.7 (in the Boussinesq it is 0.5 according to Kim et al. (2009) ). It is reasonable to assume that  $Er \approx O(u\Delta x \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2})$  for a generic geophysical simulation. Thus, the only solution to ensure a precise numerical match across the coupling interface is to have a true long wave, with negligible depth-averaged velocity curvature in the horizontal plane, at the interface location. This conclusion is not surprising, as the shallow water based COMCOT model has this as a general requirement for accuracy in any and all applications. By requiring that, at the interface, the physics represented by COMCOT are valid for that location, the mismatch in numerics essentially vanishes. If one was able to isolate the dispersive and viscous effects in the Boussinesq domain, and such effects were small at the coupling interface, the model matching would be best.
From above discussion, it can be reasonably expected that the primary errors expected at the coupling interface are driven by physical differences in the model equations, and specifically use of the COMCOT model for a hydrodynamic situation where it is, strictly speaking, beyond its physical validity limits. Note that possibly large numerical differences might also exist; however as discussed above these arise when the wave is not practically long, and the velocity curvature is not negligible. This expectation implies that some sort of special treatment to deal with the physics mismatch will be required at the interface. This will be described in more detail in the next session. The general approach will be to turn "off" of the high order terms in the Boussinesq model at the interface and slowly turn them back "on" as one moves inside the Boussinesq domain. The remaining model mismatch errors, controlled by slightly different viscous closures and very different numerical schemes, will be mitigated by spatial filtering. Stability and accuracy of this special treatment will be discussed as well.

# 2.5 Coupling Approach

The coupling method in which the shallow water model and Boussinesq model are integrated is presented here. The constituents are two-way coupled. Boundary conditions on the interfacing side of each model are provided by its counterpart model through data exchange and overlapping grid points.

#### 2.5.1 Coupling Method

To accommodate data exchange between the two models, the computational grids of both models should be overlapping, as shown in Figure 2.3. Since each model has derivatives



Figure 2.3: Schematic drawing of coupled grid system ("Zone A" is specified for Figure 2.4)

of different order in the corresponding governing equations, they each need a different number of overlapping points. These overlapping points act as exterior boundary conditions on the spatial edges of the computational domain; they are effectively imaginary grid points with data values taken from the neighboring model. As seen in Figure 2.4, COMCOT needs two points as a boundary condition whereas the Boussinesq model requires four neighboring points due to the 4th order MUSCL-TVD scheme and 3rd order spatial derivatives. Also, special attention must be paid to the calculation of velocity as each model defines velocity (or flux) at a different location relative to a cell (grid points are defined at the center of a cell). In the Boussinesq model, surface elevation as well as



Figure 2.4: Data exchange schematic between COMCOT and Boussinesq grids (Detailed view of "Zone A" in Figure 2.3)

velocity components are defined at center of the cell based. On the other hand, flux has been placed at the interface of each cell in COMCOT model due to the staggered grid.

With this concept of the interface treatment, we propose the calculation algorithm as shown in Figure 2.5. The algorithm consists of two main parts. The first part is the COMCOT model calculation on the left side of Figure 2.5 and the other is the Boussinesq model calculation on the right side. They exchange data every time step through two-way coupling, as indicated by the boxes in the middle of Figure 2.5.

The coupling algorithm can be explained in more detail by proceeding step by step. Let it be assumed that information up to time level  $t = t_n$  is known. Note that the numerical scheme of COMCOT is staggered not only in space but also in time. Therefore



Figure 2.5: Flowchart of coupled COMCOT-Boussinesq model calculations

in COMCOT, flux is known at time level  $t = t_n$  and the surface elevation at time level  $t = t_{n-1/2}$ . For the Boussinesq model, the surface elevation and velocities at time level  $t = t_{n-1/2}$  are known. All dependent variables in the Boussinesq model are calculated at the same time level,  $t = t_{n+1/2}$ , whereas COMCOT simulates the surface elevation and flux terms at the time level  $t = t_{n+1/2}$  and  $t = t_{n+1}$ , respectively, following the leap frog scheme. The coupled solution scheme is outlined below.

- 1. Calculate COMCOT free surface at time level  $t = t_{n+1/2}$  by solving the NLSW continuity equation with flux information at time level  $t = t_n$  and surface elevation at time level  $t = t_{n-1/2}$ .
- 2. Calculate all Predictor step values in the Boussinesq model, yielding initial predictions at time level  $t = t_{n+1/2}$  for surface elevation as well as velocity.
- 3. Transfer Predictor Boussinesq surface elevation values and fluxes along the interface at time level  $t = t_{n+1/2}$  and  $t = t_n$ , respectively, into COMCOT as boundary conditions. Note that Boussinesq flux term should be interpolated not only spatially but also in time. Linear one-dimensional interpolation is used, numerically consistent with the upwind differencing in COMCOT. If the grid size in each model is not constant, utilize a two-dimensional (bi-linear) interpolation technique to give appropriate boundary condition at the interface.
- 4. Calculate the COMCOT flux at time level  $t = t_{n+1}$  by solving the shallow water momentum equation with surface elevation information at time level  $t = t_{n+1/2}$ along with flux at time level  $t = t_n$ . In this step, the information transferred from Boussinesq model has been used.

- 5. Extract the boundary condition at time level  $t = t_{n+1/2}$  to be transferred from COMCOT into the Boussinesq model. Again, note that the Boussinesq model does not employ a staggered-grid in time. Having already calculated the COMCOT surface elevation at time level  $t = t_{n+1/2}$ , our interest will focus on getting the COMCOT flux at time level  $t = t_{n+1/2}$ . This can be done simply by taking average two values both at time level  $t = t_n$  and  $t = t_{n+1}$ .
- 6. Transfer the COMCOT surface elevation and flux along the interface at time level  $t = t_{n+1/2}$  into the Boussinesq as boundary conditions required for the implicit corrector step.
- 7. Calculate the surface elevation and velocities at  $t = t_{n+1/2}$  from the Boussinesq Corrector using COMCOT boundary conditions at time level  $t = t_{n+1/2}$ .
- 8. Optionally, a filtering technique can be applied in order to remove spurious twogrid wave components with high frequency. See the "Special Numerical Interface Treatment" section below for details.
- 9. Return to step 1 for the next time step.

## 2.5.2 Coupling with Different Grid Size

Coupling with different grid sizes can also be accommodated. For the estimation of information at an interface, an interpolation technique has been used. If the relative position of a desired point in a grid is known,  $f_a$  at the desired point $(x_a, y_a)$  is calculated by using bilinear interpolation as follows.

$$f_a = (1-t)(1-u)f_{BL} + t(1-u)f_{BR} + tuf_{TR} + (1-t)uf_{TL}$$
(2.18)

in which

$$t \equiv \frac{x_a - x_L}{x_R - x_L}, \ \ u \equiv \frac{y_a - y_B}{y_T - y_B}$$
 (2.19)

where the subscript L, R, B and T in the above definition respectively means left, right, bottom and top. Figure 2.6 shows the grid system for coupling with different grid sizes.

## 2.5.3 Special Numerical Interface Treatment

Each of the two numerical models coupled here has its own governing equations (approximated physics) and numerical scheme, and this can result in both a physical and numerical mismatch along the interface, as discussed above. From a qualitative analysis of the equations and numerical differences, it is extrapolated that large numerical differences arise only when significant equation (physics) differences exist. This expectation was observed during early testing of the interface. To reduce this primary error dependency on the mismatch of model physics, the high-order dispersive terms in the Boussinesq model are neglected at the interface. These terms are linearly ramped back into the equations over a length of 20 grid points moving away from the COMCOT interface.

While forcing the two numerical schemes to solve similar governing equations at the interface eliminates a large fraction of the interface error, the different viscous treatments and numerical solvers will still incur some error in the simulation. This error commonly



Figure 2.6: Grid system for different grid sizes between COMCOT and Boussinesq Model (Lower-left corner section only)

takes the form of spurious high-frequency, two-grid wave components; in essence numerical noise reflected off "improper" boundary conditions. To remove this spurious two-grid wave component, the nine-point spatial filter is employed as suggested in Shapiro (1970).

$$\zeta_{i} = \frac{1}{256} \{ 186\zeta_{i} + 56 (\zeta_{i-1} + \zeta_{i+1}) - 28 (\zeta_{i-2} + \zeta_{i+2}) + 8 (\zeta_{i-3} + \zeta_{i+3}) - (\zeta_{i-4} + \zeta_{i+4}) \}$$

$$(2.20)$$

31

Note that application of this filter is common in high-order Boussinesq applications, which tend to be prone to high frequency instability (e.g. Gobbi and Kirby, 1999), and is not used in the COMCOT domain. The filter is typically applied throughout the entire Boussinesq domain once every 100 time steps.

## 2.6 Validation

As discussed above, coupling of two heterogeneous models is subject to the generation of undesirable errors. These errors are a function of wave nonlinearity and dispersion, and are difficult to quantify directly for model operation. To define validity for practical application, a general benchmark test is proposed with various initial, geometric, and numerical conditions. For this simulation experiment, COMCOT's nonlinear shallow water equation model is coupled with the fully nonlinear version of the Boussinesq model. This approach is taken in order to examine the typical applicability space, since this combination can be regarded as both the most physically well-matched coupling (compared to using the linear COMCOT), and likely also the most common matching setup. The ad-hoc modifications presented in the "Special Numerical Interface Treatment" are not used here, to provide a more conservative result. Finally, output from these "validation" simulations are evaluated, with a strong focus on stability and accuracy.

#### 2.6.1 Gaussian Hump Simulation

The Gaussian hump initial condition is very useful for this test as the resulting water surface disturbance radiates in all directions, forcing cross-derivatives in model to be non-zero; there is no dominant propagation direction. The Gaussian hump used here has the initial free surface condition defined as,

$$\zeta(x, y, t) = H_0 \exp\left[-\frac{1}{\alpha^2} \left\{ (x - x_0)^2 + (y - y_0)^2 \right\} \right]$$
(2.21)

where  $H_0$  is the initial height of the hump at its center  $(x_0, y_0)$  and  $\alpha$  is the characteristic horizontal lengthscale of the Gaussian hump. All initial velocities are set to zero. The analytical solution for this case can be derived with the assumption of a small amplitude wave, or equivalently a linearization of the governing equations. A solution using Fourier decomposition can be found in Wei et al.(1995).

#### 2.6.2 Physical and Numerical Setup

The test cases include various physical conditions with different initial  $H_0/h$  and  $\alpha/h$ , in order to consider the effect of nonlinearity and frequency dispersion on the results. Figure 2.7 shows the physical layout of the basin and computational grids. The length of the basin has been fixed at 100m over all the simulations while the various other parameters are changed. Nonlinearity is expressed in the typical format as  $\epsilon = H_0/h$  and dispersion as  $\mu = h/L^*$ . Here  $L^*$ , is a characteristic length scale of the initial condition, given as the length between wave points at 5%  $H_0$ , and graphically defined in Figure 2.8. The tested range of this parameter is 0.0002 to 0.0193, a range common for tsunamis where significant dispersion is not expected to be important.  $\mu$  is not studied in this parametric exercise; these results are only valid for incident long waves where COMCOT



Figure 2.7: Physical concept of Gaussian hump simulations; top: front view, bottom: plan view



Figure 2.8: Definition sketch for  $L^*$ 

can be expected to yield accurate predictions. Nonlinearity ranges from  $\epsilon = 0.001$  to  $\epsilon = 1.0$ .

Along with different combinations of physical conditions, numerical parameters are varied as well. These numerical parameters, represented by the grid size ratio between COMCOT and Boussinesq model( $r = \Delta x_C / \Delta x_B$ ) and the CFL condition( $Cr = \sqrt{gh}\Delta t/\Delta x$ ) are set to cover a wide range of possible configurations. Additionally, the ratio of the Boussinesq grid size to the water depth( $e = \Delta x_B/h$ ) is tracked to examine some observed instability possibly due to a relatively small Boussinesq grid size.

Consequently, throughout the simulations, four dimensionless parameters  $(r, \epsilon, Cr,$ and e) are controlled so as to characterize factors affecting the numerical results. Those parameters and their ranges are listed in Table 2.1, producing 320 unique parameter combinations. For any four parameter set, a simulation is completely described in terms

Table 2.1: Simulation Setup

r	$\epsilon$	Cr	e
1	0.001	0.01	1
2	0.01	0.05	2
4	0.1	0.1	5
6	1	0.5	10
10	-	-	-

of its physical and numerical configuration. The order by which all the parameters can be calculated is as follows:

- 1. Calculate  $\Delta x_B$  using r ( $\Delta x_C = 1.0$ m,  $nx_C = 100$  throughout all the simulations)
- 2. Next, the number of grid points in the Boussinesq domain can be determined as  $nx_B = r \times (50 1) + 1 + 4 + 4$ . Note that for imaginary, overlapping grids, 4 grids
  are added on each edge
- 3. Calculate h using e
- 4.  $H_0$  can be obtained by  $\epsilon (= H_0/h)$
- 5. The initial Gaussian surface is generated using  $\alpha = 15$  m
- 6. Finally,  $\Delta t$  is determined using  $Cr(=\sqrt{gh}\Delta t/\Delta x_B)$

where  $\Delta x$ , nx denote grid size and grid number, respectively,  $\Delta t$  the time increment, h the water depth, and  $H_0$  the height of hump, respectively. The non-dimensional simulation time,  $t' (= t\sqrt{gh}/L^*) = 30$  has been used for all cases; all individual cases have approximately the same number of water surface fluctuations (characteristic periods) during each simulation.

36

Among the 320 runs, the most computationally expensive case will be the one with r = 10, Cr = 0.01, and  $\epsilon = 1.0$  which corresponds to  $\Delta x_B = 0.1$ m,  $\Delta t = 0.01$ sec and  $nx_B = 499$ . On the other hand, the set having r = 1, Cr = 0.5 and e = 10 which gives  $\Delta x_B = 1.0$ m,  $\Delta t = 0.505$ sec and  $nx_B = 58$  will be the most rapid. Runs required a few minutes to a few hours to complete on a desktop computer; the longest runs where those which developed numerical instabilities, causing excessive iteration of the Boussinesq corrector step.

#### 2.6.3 Simulation Results

Comparison with an analytical solution is, of course, the ideal method to evaluate the accuracy of a numerical model. However, the aforementioned analytical solution is be obtained using linearization; most of the ( $\epsilon$ ) values tested would violate the required assumption for linearization. Hence, the analytical solution will only be used to show that the coupled numerical model is producing accurate results for the smallest ( $\epsilon$ ) cases. Figure 2.9 shows the time series of water surface elevation at the center of the Boussiensq domain when  $r = 1, \epsilon = 0.001, Cr = 0.01$  and e = 10. The comparison between numerical and analytical data is excellent for this small amplitude case and the coupled model works quite well. Snapshots of water surface elevation when  $r = 1, \epsilon = 1, Cr = 0.01$  and e = 10 are also given in Figure 2.10. These snapshots are showing both the Boussiensq and COMCOT surfaces, and there are no evident numerical errors along the interface, or anywhere else in the domain.

Now, interest turns to evaluating output from all 320 simulations in some characteristic way. Here, the time series of surface elevation at the center of the domain will be used



Figure 2.9: Temporal variation of free surface elevation at the center of the wave basin  $(r = 1, \epsilon = 0.001, Cr = 0.01 \text{ and } e = 10)$ 



Figure 2.10: Snapshots of water surface at 3 different times ( $r=1, \epsilon=1, Cr=0.01$  and e=10)

as the comparison basis. Considering that use of the linearized analytical solution is not helpful for assessment of highly nonlinear cases, some other available data for accuracy evaluation must be found. Here, a "base" case for each  $\epsilon$  and  $\mu$  combination is proposed. Each base case uses r = 1 and Cr = 0.01, which is expected to produce most accurate and stable result for any physical parameter combination. Therefore, each simulation is able to be evaluated relative to its base case, assumed to be the "correct" solution. Note, however, that with this approach, it is not possible to state with absolute confidence that the "base" case represents an accurate solution, only a stable, converged one. It is likely that stability and accuracy occur in tandem, but this is not guaranteed. Simulations that closely resemble the "base" case can be considered stable simulations, while simulations that do not resemble the "base" case are most likely unstable and inaccurate. Each numerical result is rated with respect to the root mean square (RMS) difference from its base case averaged through the last two dimensionless time units, from t' = 28 to 30 . An example depicting this procedure is shown in Figure 2.11. Note that if a particular simulation crashes due to instability, this RMS difference is set to 1.0.

Despite the straightforward assessment of the simulation data, it is not a simple matter to demonstrate the relation between the error and the 4 parameters. As indicated in Table 2.1 and mentioned earlier, the 4 parameters are interrelated, yet affect the results in different ways. For an explicit measure of accuracy and stability using the 4 correlated parameters, a dimensionless parameter, the stability index  $\gamma$ , is introduced. The stability index is a product of  $r, \epsilon, Cr$ , and e and is expressed as

$$\gamma = r^a \epsilon^b C r^c e^d \tag{2.22}$$

40



Figure 2.11: Calculation of standard deviation when  $r=2, \epsilon=0.001, Cr=0.01$  and e=10

where the exponents a, b, c and d are to-be-determined by nonlinear regression analysis on the processed data set. Through the stability index  $\gamma$ , the accuracy and stability properties of a coupled model simulation can be characterized, approximately, before said simulation is run. The higher the  $\gamma$  value, the more poorly behaved the simulation should be. The exponents a, b, c and d are found through a best fit with the RMS error of each simulation; the calibrated stability index should yield the RMS error expected late in a simulation.

Through the nonlinear regression analysis, a, b, c and d are found as 0.0001, 0.0328, 0.0621 and -0.0040, respectively. This implies that the Courant number (Cr) is the most dominant factor in a simulation, whereas the stability of the coupled model is insensitive to both the grid ratio factor (r) and the depth-scaled grid length in the Boussinesq model (e). Figure 2.12 shows the error distribution according to  $\gamma$ . It is not surprising that the distribution of RMS error in Figure 2.12 resembles a typical cumulative probability curve. There is a transition between stable simulations (RMS error 0) and unstable, inaccurate simulations (RMS error 1), and this error "accumulates" with increasing  $\gamma$ . From this result, it can roughly but conservatively be stated that the stability index  $\gamma$  is recommended to be less than 0.9 to provide a high likelyhood of a stable simulation.

## 2.7 Tsunami Wave Fission Simulation

As mentioned in the Introduction, the Boussinesq model has the ability to yield a reasonably complete representation of coastal hydrodynamics. In this section, which is focused on the demonstration of these properties through an efficient use of the coupled model,



Figure 2.12: Error distribution according to stability index,  $\gamma,$  with fitted curve

model verification will be performed using laboratory data. Matsuyama et al.(2007) conducted an experiment in a 205m long channel using a large and undistorted scale to investigate tsunami shoaling on the continental shelf. The incident waveform uses a sinusoidal-shape wave with single cycle defined as

$$\zeta = A \sin\left(\frac{2\pi}{T}t\right), \quad 0 \le t \le T$$
$$= 0, \quad t > T \tag{2.23}$$

where A is wave amplitude, T is period, and t is time. A single experimental case with A=0.03m and T=20sec, which exhibits significant transmi shoaling on the continental shelf, is utilized for this study. The experimental set-up is depicted in Figure 2.13, where the bathymetry includes a depth-varying shelf connected by two mild-slopes. Long waves from the deep water depth become steeper and possibly short-crested when propagating onto a shallow shelf; nonlinearity and dispersion effects may need to be taken into account for an accurate representation of the long wave transformation.

For the offshore propagation region (Layers 1 and 2), the linear shallow water version of COMCOT is applied using a relatively coarse grid size of 1.5 m and 0.3 m, respectively. Along the nearshore area, the nonlinear shallow water equations (Layer 3) are coupled with the Boussinesq model (Layer 4), both using the same relatively fine grid of 0.075 m. Note that a second simulation, without using the Boussinesq model (i.e. Layer 4 removed), was also performed. This will allow for a direct comparison between nearshore predictions of COMCOT and the Boussinesq model, with both using precisely the same incident wave



Figure 2.13: Definition sketch of a long wave propagating onto a shallow shelf (LSW:Linear Shallow Water Equation, NLSW: Nonlinear Shallow Water Equation)

condition and numerical grid sizes. Figure 2.14 presents time series comparisons of water surface elevation between the model results and measurements at different locations. The coupled model comparisons are given in the left half of the figure, while the COMCOTonly results are shown in the right half. Clearly different behavior of the wave front in the shallow shelf region is predicted by the coupled and COMCOT-only models. The front of the long wave becomes short-crested and generates (or strictly speaking, disintegrates into) several solitons of different size (e.g., Madsen and Mei(1969)); this process is referred to as tsunami wave fission in the literature. This transformation is the classic undular bore formulation which is dispersive in nature, and thus not predictable by the shallow water wave equations solved by COMCOT. The coupled model predicts a maximum sea surface elevation at the front of the tsunami which is 2.0 times larger than COMCOT alone, yielding a good agreement with measured data in both amplitude and speed. This type of difference is highly local in nature, and provides a reasonable picture of the magnitude and scale of dispersion-driven physics during nearshore tsunami evolution.

## 2.8 2004 Sumatra Tsunami Simulation

As a practical test, the coupled model is applied to the historical tsunami event of December 2004 in the Indian ocean, through which the comprehensive lifespan of a tsunami, from its generation, propagation, shoaling, and run-up, might be investigated in true scale. Our specific geographic focus is Port Salalah, along the southeastern Omani coastline. As noted in the model description, the Boussinesq model enhanced with the viscosity and vorticity terms (i.e. Kim et al, 2009) is capable of simulating turbulence effects such



Figure 2.14: Time histories of water surface elevations at 4 different locations. In the left half of the figure are shown the coupled model results (solid line: Boussinesq model (Layer 4, dashed line: Measured data), while the right half of the figure shows the COMCOT only results at the same times (solid line: Nonlinear Shallow Water Equation model (Layer 3), dashed line: Measured data)



Figure 2.15: Initial surface elevation of 2004 Sumatra tsunami

as large eddies and wakes generated in the nearshore or harbors. Hence, another point of interest, aside from the dispersion differences noted in the previous comparison, is predicting such complex turbulent physics, and this is one of the major advantages arising from integrating the two models.

#### 2.8.1 Simulation Setup

The bathymetric data and grid system has been organized to simulate 2004 Sumatra tsunami using the multigrid system in COMCOT. Figure 2.15 shows the initial sea surface elevation induced by the 2004 Sumatra earthquake within the entire computational domain, covering from  $(45^{\circ}\text{E}, -10^{\circ}\text{N})$  to  $(105^{\circ}\text{E}, 30^{\circ}\text{N})$ . Open ocean bathymetry and

topography is taken from the GEBCO database, while shallow bathymetry off the coast of Oman is taken from digitized nautical charts. The parent domain, numbered Layer 1, has 4 subdomains given as Layers 2 through 5; higher numbered grids are nested within lower numbered grids. Layer 3, for example, is nested within Layer 2, and has a finer grid size and smaller time step. All the parameters necessary for simulation are listed in Table 2.2. From Layer 1 to 4, COMCOT is applied. Near Port Salalah in Oman (Layer 5), the main area of interest, the Boussinesq model with the highest grid resolution is applied in order to capture local and turbulent dynamics, such as vortices, inside the harbor. It is worthwhile to note that the grid resolution is decreased by a factor of 400 from Layer 1 to Layer 5. Additionally, a readily calculated maximum stability index value,  $\gamma$ , is 0.8, assuming that the nonlinearity ( $\epsilon$ ) and water depth are the conservative values of 1 and 23m, respectively. While this stability index is near the limit of our recommended range, the use of the conservative values implies expected stability for this numerical configuration.

For the generation of an initial surface condition for the tsunami, the three-subfaultsource condition of Wang and Liu(2006) has been applied; the parameters of which are listed in Table 2.3. The runtime of the simulation is set to 830 minutes of physical time. Additionally, for the purpose of comparison between the results with and without coupling, another simulation using only COMCOT has been implemented with the same configuration except the grid size of Layer 4. In this COMCOT-only simulation, the grid resolution of layer 4 is set to 9.3 m, which is the resolution used by the Boussinesq layer in the coupled model.

Layer No.	x range(longitude, °E)	y range(latitude, °N)	$nx \times ny$	dx	dt(sec)	Model
Layer 1	$45^{\circ}00'00'' \sim 105^{\circ}00'00''$	$-10^{\circ}00'00'' \sim 30^{\circ}00'00''$	$1801 \times 1201$	2'	1	LSW(S) $^{a}$
Layer 2	$45^{\circ}17'12'' \sim 61^{\circ}38'48''$	$12^{\circ}17'12'' \sim 28^{\circ}18'48''$	$2455{\times}2405$	24''	0.5	LSW(S)
Layer 3	$52^{\circ}56'38'' \sim 56^{\circ}28'58''$	$16^{\circ}08'38'' \sim 18^{\circ}04'58''$	$2655{\times}1455$	4.8''	0.25	LSW(S)
Layer 4	$53^{\circ}58'00'' \sim 54^{\circ}04'00''$	$16^{\circ}54'00'' \sim 17^{\circ}00'00''$	$600 \times 600$	18.5m	0.125	NLSW $^{b}$
Layer 5	$53^{\circ}59'46'' \sim 54^{\circ}01'18''$	$16^{\circ}55'46'' \sim 16^{\circ}57'19''$	$309 \times 309$	$9.3\mathrm{m}$	0.125	$\mathrm{BOUSS}^{c}$

Table 2.2: Grid setup for 2004 Sumatra Tsunami simulation

 $^a\mathrm{Linear}$  Shallow Water Model in Spherical Coordinates

<sup>b</sup>Non-Linear Shallow Water Model in Cartesian Coordinates

<sup>c</sup>Boussinesq Model in Cartesian Coordinates

Parameter	Fault 1	Fault 2	Fault 3
Latitude of epicenter(°N)	7.6	4.15	11.85
Longitude of epicenter(°E)	93	94.55	92.3
Focal $depth(km)$	5	5	5
Length of fault plane(km)	670	200	300
Width of fault plane(km)	150	150	150
Dislocation(m)	15	15	15
Strike $angle(^{\circ})$	345	300	365
Slip angle( $^{\circ}$ )	90	90	90
Dip $angle(^{\circ})$	13	13	13

Table 2.3: Fault parameters for 2004 Sumatra earthquake

## 2.8.2 Results and Discussion

From the simulation result, the first tsunami waves arrive at Salalah port in Oman (Layer 5) approximately 420 minutes after the earthquake. This is comparable to the initial arrival time at the Port of 433 minutes post-earthquake, as reported by Okal et al. (2006). Afterward, successive attacks by a long train of tsunami waves caused a significant disturbance inside and immediately near the harbor. These disturbances are given in Okal et al. (2006) who discuss various ship incidents during the tsunami attack. They reported that a freighter docked at the berth had broken its mooring lines and drifted in- and outside the harbor, caught in a complex system of eddies and currents. The coupled model system appears to be able to represent these chaotic dynamics. Figure 2.16 shows one result of sea surface in each layer at 730minutes after tsunami generation, with an extra plot for the vorticity inside the harbor taken from the Boussinesq layer. Along the breakwater and coastline, the tsunami generates eddies of various sizes, and the flow is chaotic. Vorticity evolution as the tsunami propagates into the harbor has been reasonably captured by the Boussinesq model and is depicted in Figure 2.17.



Figure 2.16: Surface elevation (m) in all layers at time=730min. The lower row shows the output from Layer 5, the Boussinesq model, of the free surface elevation (left) and vorticity (1/s) (right).

Elapsed Time=525min

Elapsed Time=550min

Elapsed Time=500min

Figure 2.17: Vorticity (1/s) evolution inside Oman Salalah harbor at nine different times

A comparison between the vorticity results of COMCOT and the Boussinesq model is shown in Figure 2.18. Eddies are very weakly generated in COMCOT relative to the Boussinesq model. While bottom drag, which generates the boundary shear layers that curl up into the large eddies, are modeled differently in the two models, this is likely not the reason for the large difference; for a given velocity the bottom friction from the two formulations will be similar at this geophysical scale. The most likely cause of this large difference is the numerical truncation error of the upwind differencing in COMCOT, given as variable Er in section 4.2. This error can be expressed as

$$Er = 0.5(1 - Cr)u\Delta x \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} = \nu_{num} \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}$$
(2.24)

and so can clearly be viewed as a diffusion term. For a  $Cr \approx 0.5$  and flow speeds ranging from 1-5 m/s, the numerical eddy viscosity,  $\nu_{num}$ , varies from  $\approx 2 - 10 \ m^2/s$ . This is a very large diffusion coefficient, and taken with the expectation that the velocity curvature is large inside boundary shear layers and eddies, it is evident that the numerical diffusion in the COMCOT model is driving the large differences in the vorticity patterns. As the two models predict different eddy patterns, the velocity predictions inside the harbor will be equally varied. Specifically, with the large and interacting eddies predicted by the coupled model, the simulated velocities are much larger. This kinematic aspect is of great importance to harbors during tsunamis, as it is the currents that lead to drag forces great enough to snap mooring lines, and transport large freighters as randomly meandering "ghost" ships. If one is interested in simulating this rotational features, numerical errors from low-order upwinding should be avoided.







Time=713min (Boussinesq)



Time=713min (COMCOT)



Time=832min (Boussinesq)







Figure 2.18: Comparison of vorticity (1/s) evolution by Boussinesq-coupled model (left) and COMCOT-only (right)

## 2.9 Summary

For the purpose of seamlessly modeling tsunami evolution from generation to inundation with fine scale resolution, without the loss of important physics, a two-way coupled model for tsunami simulation has been developed. The two components are the shallow-water solver COMCOT and a dispersive, turbulent, and rotational Boussinesq model. A general framework in which the coupled model is implemented is as follows: Since COMCOT is well designed for generation and propagation of a tsunami in the open ocean, it will be responsible for the computation of oceanic evolution. On the other hand, the final stage of tsunami life, including nearshore dynamics such as inundation, nonlinear wave interactions, steep bore fronts, and turbulent activity, will be described by a fully nonlinear Boussinesq-type model. The Boussinesq model that can describe nearshore evolution of a tsunami with high physical detail is designed to be located flexibly within COMCOT as a nested layer.

As coupling of two heterogeneous models may result in undesirable errors, a general benchmark test has been completed with various conditions provided for validity of the coupled model application. With regard to stability and accuracy, the simulation output is evaluated and general guidance for the coupled models application space has been presented; the so-called stability index  $\gamma$  should be less than 0.9. As a further validation of the coupled model in the nearshore region, long wave propagation onto a shallow shelf has been examined and compared with laboratory data. Distinct dispersive effects at the leading wave front have been observed through use of the Boussinesq model, which demonstrates that near coastal areas, dispersive effects may be locally important. Finally, a recent tsunami event, the 2004 Sumatra tsunami, has been simulated with a far field focus on the Port of Salalah. The coupled model has successfully simulated various sizes of eddies generated by the tsunami through turbulence activity. The results are further supported by observations addressed in Okal et al.(2006). It is found that one needs to be very careful when using numerical solution schemes with leading order diffusion errors to predict such rotational features, as this numerical error can rapidly remove intense shear layers and strong eddies from the current field.

## Chapter 3

# Interaction of Shallow Water Waves with Weakly Sheared Currents of Arbitrary Profile

A set of depth-integrated equations describing combined wave-current flows is derived in this chapter. To account for the turbulent effects by nonlinear interaction between waves and underlying currents with arbitrary horizontal vorticity, additional stresses are introduced. A parameter b is included in the additional stresses to represent the radiation stress of waves over the ambient current field. Doppler shift effect is theoretically proved to be retained appropriately in the equation set. To solve the equations, a fourth-order MUSCL-TVD scheme incorporated with approximated Riemann solver, is adopted for leading order terms while a cell-averaged finite volume method is utilized for higher-order terms. The model results are validated through comparisons with three experimental data sets. The first simulation is about the propagation of a long wave over a depth-uniform or linearly-sheared current and the comparison with the measurements shows good agreements. Then, based on Kemp and Simons(1982, 1983)'s experiments, a reasonable value for b is estimated. Finally, the model is applied to a more complex configuration where bichromatic waves are interacting with a spatially varying current. The simulated results clearly indicate that the model is capable of predicting the wave and current flows more accurately.

# 3.1 Introduction

The coastal area involves hydrodynamic situations in which different flows such as waves, currents and tides are coexisting and interacting with each other. In the shallow coastal zones, in particular, a gravity wave is subject to interact with the current which is usually driven by tides, thermocline, salinity variations and river mouth discharges. Morphodynamic changes, mixing and transport of solutes in coastal region will be governed by the combined wave-current flows. Therefore, the interaction between wave and current is of prime importance to the physical processes in the coastal zone.

Waves and currents have different hydrodynamic properties which will allow the distinctions between them. For instance, waves transfer energy without conveying mass while the currents transfer both energy and mass. Also, they have effects of different timescales on the coastal environments. Sediment transport at nearshore area is driven mainly by currents, and therefore evolves on the long-term scales (commonly on the order of days). On the other hand, waves contribute to the sediment transportation on shorter-time scale by the radiation stress. Therefore, both long-time scale and short-time scale effects have to be included while studying the physical processes in wave-current co-existing situations.
In wave and current environments, the nonlinear interaction plays a significant role and we cannot simply superpose the two components. Furthermore, the nonlinear interactions have non-negligible impacts on hydrodynamics of wave-current system, especially in the turbulent boundary layer with high roughness(e.g., Grant and Madsen(1979), Davies et al.(1988)). Therefore, turbulent processes as well as velocity profiles are of particular interest in the wave-current situation.

Turbulent interaction of wave and current has been investigated quite extensively in the past decade, theoretically and experimentally. Laboratory experiments includes Thomas(1981, 1990),Kemp and Simons(1982, 1983), Klopman(1994), Swan et al.(2001). Most recently, Fernando et al.(2011) presented experimental results on wave-current interaction at an angle along with comprehensive reviews on previous works. One interesting finding in these experiments is that when the waves and currents are co-flowing (or counter-flowing), mean velocity near the free surface tends to curl back (or forward), giving negative (or positive) gradient of velocity ( $\partial u/\partial z$ ). Smith(2006) mentioned that the backward flows are introduced compensate for the Stokes drift effect by waves. A possible explanation for this mixing-like process induced by waves is that the presence of waves introduces additional shear stress over the underlying mean flow, yielding a modified Reynolds stresses in the combined wave-current field(e.g., You(1996), Groeneweg and Klopman(1998), Huang and Mei(2003), Umeyama(2005), Yang et al.(2006), Lin(2008)).

Umeyama(2005) provided a feasible insight regarding these previously-mentioned physics through laboratory investigations. They conducted series of experiments on wave-current turbulent intensities and Reynolds stress in combined wave-current flows. Experiments showed the modification of Reynolds stress (i.e.,  $\langle \overline{u'v'} \rangle$ ) by the action of waves on mean flows.

On the other hand, numerical models for wave-current interaction have been developed for deep or for finite depth waves(e.g., Swan et al.(2001), Swan and James(2001), Nwogu(2009)) and for long waves(e.g., Benjamin(1962), Freeman and Johnson(1970), Shen(2001)). Grant and Madsen(1979) suggested different eddy viscosities in- and outside bottom boundary layers and some works stem from this(e.g., Christofferson and Jonsson(1985), Davies et al.(1988)).

Majority of the turbulent wave-current model extensively examined near-bed physics (e.g., Kim et al.(2001)) rather than covering entire water column. So far, some numerical models have shown the capability to recreate aforementioned turbulence mixing process throughout the depth, induced by waves on currents(e.g., Dingemans et al.(1996), Groenweweg and Klopman(1998), Olabarrieta et al.(2010)). In addition, some equations have been proposed to describe the velocity profile of the mean flow either empirically (e.g., You(1996)) or analytically(e.g., Huang and Mei(2003), Yang et al.(2006)).

Interestingly, most of the previously-mentioned equations have added the higher order correction terms to the leading order solution. Despite of the elaborative efforts to understand these physics, little is developed to account numerically for turbulent wavecurrent effect in shallow water flows. Models such as FUNWAVE(e.g., Kirby et al.(2003)) are capable of predicting wave-current interactions, however only few of these are possibly able to recreate such a non-explainable phenomena. Therefore, including higher order correction effects will enhance the capability of the hydrodynamic model to study wave-current flow field. In this chapter, we derived a set of depth-integrated equations describing combined wave-current flows. The effects of turbulence introduced not only by bottom friction but also by nonlinear interaction between the waves and the underlying currents with arbitrary horizontal vorticity, are included.

This chapter is organized as follows. Firstly, wave-current interactions will be briefly explored in following section. Next section will be devoted to the description of derivation of the governing equations. Then, validity of the current model will be performed through three numerical simulations. Final conclusion is made at the end of this chapter.

### 3.2 Brief Review on Wave-Current Interactions

Waves and currents are known to influence each other when existing together. For example, waves propagating on an opposing current undergoes some transformations as they become shorter and steeper. In the case where the opposite current speed exceeds the wave group speed, the waves are more likely to break and thereby provide another source of turbulence, compared to a wave on calm water(e.g., Yao and Wu(2005)). These changes will hydrodynamically affect the current as it will be briefly illustrated below.

### 3.2.1 Waves over the Current

Waves traveling over underlying currents experience a modulation in their kinematics and dynamics such as a change in wave number, frequency, and wave height. Waves become steeper and higher on following currents whereas the opposite for opposing currents. Moreover, underlying currents effectively control the wave frequency in such a way that the wave period will be longer over the following currents and shorter over the opposing one. Doppler shift is a quite common concept to explain such modulations in dispersion relationship. For uniform background currents, this effect can be mathematically proved and expressed as,

$$\sigma^2 = (\omega - ku_C)^2 = gk \tanh kh \tag{3.1}$$

where  $\sigma$  is intrinsic(or relative) angular frequency,  $\omega$  the apparent(or absolute) angular frequency, k the wave length,  $u_C$  the current speed and h water depth. For linearly shear current, it was found to be,

$$\sigma^2 = \left(\omega - ku_{Cs} + \frac{\mathcal{W}_0}{2} \tanh kh\right)^2 = gk \tanh kh \tag{3.2}$$

where  $u_{Cs}$  is current velocity at free surface and  $\mathcal{W}_0$  is current's constant vorticity.

Another effect of the current on the wave is the refraction due to the current variation in space, which is much similar to that by the bathymetric changes(Lin (2008)).

#### 3.2.2 Currents under the Waves

Current fields also tend to be deformed by wave actions. The wave riding on the current has many potential factors which may affect the mean flow field (e.g., a radiation stress or bottom friction enhancement). The mechanism by which the wave change the currents is yet unclear; however, it is believed that an additional shear stress exerts on the mean flow owing to nonlinear wave-current interactions, feeding horizontal vorticity to the interior flow. This stress is considered to be generated by the radiation stress of waves and mean flows (Lin(2008)). Many experimental results showed consistently that this stress is capable to tilt forward or backward the current velocity depending on the wavecurrent directions, and is maximized near the free surface with decreasing into the depth. The vorticity of the current is also known to affect this mechanism(Swan et al.(2001)). However, near-bed velocity is not significantly affected by such stress, so it can be modeled using the general 'log-law' profile(Kemp and Simons (1982), Fernando et al. (2011)). Although the above effect is relatively concentrated in the upper layer of the fluid, this should be included for the complete description of velocity profile for accurate modeling. Some equations have been proposed to identify the resultant velocity profile of mean flow under wave action. You(1996), for instance, suggested semi-empirical equation based on experimental record as,

$$\frac{u(z)}{u_*} = \frac{1}{\kappa} \log \frac{z+h}{\delta} + C \frac{h}{\kappa u_* |u_*|} \log \frac{-z}{h}$$
(3.3)

where u(z) is mean flow velocity profile,  $u_*$  is shear velocity, z is vertical axis directing upward from free surface,  $\kappa$  is von Karman constant, h is water depth and  $\delta$  is roughness height. Dimensional parameter C can be obtained by empirical formula from You(1996), but with some lack of consideration on waves properties. The second term of Equation 3.3 implies higher-order correction component to the first term(i.e., log-law profile which has its origin in Prandtl's mixing length hypothesis) under the wave-free situation. Similar formulations can be found in Umeyama(2005) and Yang et al.(2006) with minor differences. Typically, bed roughness is supposed to be enhanced by wave-current co-existence and this idea can be realized theoretically by considering the bottom friction for combined wave-current flows(e.g., see Grant and Madsen(1986)).

# 3.3 Boussinesq Equations for Waves and Currents

A set of depth-integrated equations for long waves under the current fields is derived in this section. The perturbation approach to manipulate a primitive equation into a derivative one is used in the present study. This technique is adopted to develop Boussinesq-type equations including the effect of wave-current interactions. As are 'standard' Boussinesq equations, nonlinearity and dispersive effects of long waves would be the basis in the perturbation procedure. The viscous terms can be added as perturbed terms into the inviscid Boussinesq equations to explain bottom-induced turbulence effects(Kim et al.(2009)). The primary procedure to introduce a turbulence induced by wave-current interaction, follows Kim et al.(2009).

#### 3.3.1 Non-dimensionalized Governing Physics and Boundary Conditions

Physical variables are defined as shown in Figure 3.1 to describe the propagation of waves over depth-varying currents. The variables are normalized by characteristic variables introduced below. Typical length scale  $\ell_0$  and  $h_0$  are used for horizontal and vertical coordinates, respectively. Using this set of scaling parameters, nondimensional variables are obtained as,

$$(x,y) = \frac{(x^*, y^*)}{\ell_0}, \qquad z = \frac{z^*}{h_0}, \qquad \zeta = \frac{\zeta^*}{h_0}, \qquad h = \frac{h^*}{h_0}, \qquad t = \frac{t^* \sqrt{gh_0}}{\ell_0},$$
$$(u,v) = \frac{(u^*, v^*)}{\sqrt{gh_0}}, \qquad w = \frac{w^*}{\mu\sqrt{gh_0}}, \qquad p = \frac{p^*}{\rho gh_0},$$
$$\mu = \frac{h_0}{\ell_0}, \qquad \nu_t^h = \frac{\nu_t^{h^*}}{\alpha h_0 \sqrt{gh_0}}, \qquad \nu_t^v = \frac{\nu_t^{v^*}}{\beta h_0 \sqrt{gh_0}}$$
(3.4)

where ()\* denotes dimensional variable, (u, v) and w represents velocity components in (x, y) and z directions, respectively,  $\zeta$  is surface elevation, t is time, p is pressure, g is gravitational acceleration and  $\rho$  is density.  $\nu_t^h$  and  $\nu_t^v$  represent turbulent eddy viscosities in horizontal and vertical directions, respectively. Parameter  $\mu$  is chosen to scale the dispersion property of long waves. It is noted that no parameter for nonlinearity is gained above, so that leads to fully nonlinear equations. In addition, small parameters  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are used for the viscous terms, whose full descriptions can be found in Kim et al.(2009). While the procedures throughout the entire derivation fairly resemble Kim et al.(2009), velocity u represents the instantaneous horizontal velocity including both wave and current components. Therefore the velocity u means combined wave-current velocity unless otherwise stated.

Within these parametric frameworks, continuity and Navier-Stokes equation can be casted into normalized versions as follows.

$$\nabla \cdot \boldsymbol{u} + w_z = 0 \tag{3.5}$$



Figure 3.1: Definition sketch of long wave propagation over underlying currents of arbitrary profile

$$\boldsymbol{u}_t + \boldsymbol{u} \cdot \nabla \boldsymbol{u} + w \boldsymbol{u}_z + \nabla p = \alpha \mu \nabla \cdot \left( \nu_t^h \nabla \boldsymbol{u} \right) + \frac{\beta}{\mu} \left( \nu_t^v \boldsymbol{u}_z \right)_z$$
(3.6)

$$\mu^2 w_t + \mu^2 \boldsymbol{u} \cdot \nabla w + \mu^2 w w_z + p_z + 1 = \alpha \mu^3 \nabla \cdot \left(\nu_t^h \nabla w\right) + \beta \mu \left(\nu_t^v w_z\right)_z \tag{3.7}$$

where  $\nabla = (\partial/\partial x, \partial/\partial y)$  is differential operator in horizontal plane and,  $\boldsymbol{u} = (u, v)$ is horizontal velocity vector of combined wave-current flows. Subscript z and t mean derivative operators in vertical coordinate and time, respectively.

Conditions applied at free surface and at bottom boundaries are expressed in dimensionless form, as well.

$$w = \zeta_t + \boldsymbol{u} \cdot \nabla \zeta \quad \text{at} \quad z = \zeta$$

$$(3.8)$$

$$w + \boldsymbol{u} \cdot \nabla h = 0$$
 at  $z = -h$  (3.9)

#### 3.3.2 Reynolds Stresses Under Combined Wave-Current Flow

A definition of Reynolds stress under the wave-current condition is made in this section, prior to working on derivations of the equation set. As briefly addressed in Chapter 3.2, an underlying current influenced by the wave has a different velocity profile from that under wave-free condition. This difference is mainly owing to the modified Reynolds stress, which is suggested in Umeyama(2005) and Yang et al.(2006). These turbulence effects by nonlinear wave-current interaction can be modeled through the modified Reynolds stress. Based on Umeyama(2005) and Yang et al.(2006), the turbulent shear stress concerning both bed roughness and nonlinear wave-current interaction is described as,

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_b \left( \frac{\zeta - z}{\zeta + h} \right) + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{bb} \left( \frac{z + h}{\zeta + h} \right)$$
(3.10)

where  $\boldsymbol{\tau} = (\tau^x, \tau^y)$  is the shear stress, and  $\boldsymbol{\tau}_b = (\tau_b^x, \tau_b^y)$  is bottom stress.  $\boldsymbol{\tau}_{bb} = (b^x \tau_b^x, b^y \tau_b^y)$  is additionally defined for convenient expression. Dimensionless parameter  $\boldsymbol{b} = (b^x, b^y)$  which is identical to that of Yang et al.(2006), is used to represent the linear distribution of turbulent shear stress by the wave-current interaction. The first term on the right hand side represents simply the stress due to the bottom friction, whereas

the second represents the stress induced by wave-current interaction. Therefore, ignoring the second component will result in abandonment of turbulent mixing through the wave-current interaction. Quadratic drag law is assumed to estimate the bottom stress as,

$$\boldsymbol{\tau}_b = \rho f_{cw} \boldsymbol{u} |\boldsymbol{u}| \tag{3.11}$$

where  $\boldsymbol{u}$  is 'combined' wave-current velocity,  $\rho$  is a density of fluid. Friction factor  $f_{cw}$ can be gained by the  $f_{cw} = f/4$ , where f is estimated from a formula by Haaland(1983).

#### 3.3.3 Subgrid Scale Turbulent Closure Model

In shallow water flows, the vertical eddy viscosity is assumed to be depth-constant (Elder(1959)) and this allows us to simplify the three dimensional turbulence in nature into two dimensional problem in horizontal plane. Hinterberger et al.(2007) developed an efficient two dimensional model in shallow water flows and found that two dimensional depthaveraged LES(Large Eddy Simulation) model produced sufficient accuracy for practical purposes compared to the three dimensional LES. In the present work, Smagorinsky's model is utilized for horizontal subgrid eddy viscosity( $\nu_t^h$ ), while Elder(1959)'s model adopted for vertical one( $\nu_t^v$ ) in order to essentially capture the vortical features of wavecurrent flows without the loss of the flow details(see Kim et al.(2009)).

#### 3.3.4 Depth-Integrated Momentum Equations for Waves and Currents

The assumption is made that the turbulent viscosity effects are as weak, and of a similar order as dispersion. That is,

$$O(\mu^2) = O(\mu\beta) \ll 1 \tag{3.12}$$

Either of  $\mu^2$  and  $\mu\beta$  can be utilized as a small parameter in the derivation, but the former has been chosen(Kim et al.(2009)). Each physical variable is thereby expanded as a power series of small parameter  $\mu^2$  as follows.

$$f = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mu^{2n} f_n, \quad f = (p, u, v, w) \text{ with all } f_n = O(1)$$
 (3.13)

Limiting Equation 3.7 to the lowest order yields,

$$(p_0)_z + 1 = 0 \tag{3.14}$$

which refers to hydrostatic status. Since  $\nabla p_0$  is independent of vertical coordinates, we can notice all z-dependency will be eliminated from leading order terms in Equation 3.6, including  $\boldsymbol{u}(\text{i.e.}, \boldsymbol{u}(x, y, z, t) = \boldsymbol{u}_0(x, y, t) + O(\mu^2))$ .

Depth integration of continuity equation, Equation 3.5, with applying the boundary conditions, Equation 3.8 and 3.9, will produce,

$$w_0 = -z \left(\nabla \cdot \boldsymbol{u}_0\right) - \nabla \cdot \left(h\boldsymbol{u}_0\right) = -zS - T \tag{3.15}$$

Vertical velocity expressed in terms of horizontal velocity,  $u_0$ , allows us to eliminate all the leading ordered vertical velocity in Equation 3.6 and 3.7, which means horizontal vorticity( $\Omega$ ) is at least second order(i.e.  $\Omega_0 = 0$ ). This can be seen as follows, as well.

$$\Omega^{*} = \boldsymbol{u}_{z}^{*} - \nabla w^{*} = \mu^{2} \sqrt{\frac{g}{h_{0}}} \left( \boldsymbol{u}_{1z} - \nabla w_{0} \right) + O(\mu^{4})$$
$$= \mu^{2} \sqrt{\frac{g}{h_{0}}} \Omega_{1} + O(\mu^{4})$$
(3.16)

To construct the horizontal velocity structure, we start from horizontal vorticity. Depth integration of  $\Omega_1$  from -h to z gives,

$$\boldsymbol{u}_{1} = \boldsymbol{u}_{1}|_{z=-h} - \left\{ \left( \frac{1}{2} z^{2} \nabla S + z \nabla T \right) - \left( \frac{1}{2} h^{2} \nabla S - h \nabla T \right) \right\} + \int_{-h}^{z} \boldsymbol{\Omega}_{1} dz' + O(\mu^{2})$$
(3.17)

Now, we can get the full description of horizontal velocity (u) by substituting Equation 3.17 into Equation 3.13 as follows,

$$u = u_0 + \mu^2 \left\{ u_1|_{z=-h} - \frac{1}{2} z^2 \nabla S - z \nabla T + \frac{1}{2} h^2 \nabla S - h \nabla T + \int_{-h}^z \Omega_1 dz' \right\} + O(\mu^4)$$
(3.18)

For a representative horizontal velocity, Nwogu (1993)'s depth,  $z_{\alpha}=-0.531h$  is chosen and this yields

$$\boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} = \boldsymbol{u}_{0} + \mu^{2} \left\{ \boldsymbol{u}_{1}|_{z=-h} - \frac{1}{2} z_{\alpha}^{2} \nabla S - z_{\alpha} \nabla T + \frac{1}{2} h^{2} \nabla S - h \nabla T + \int_{-h}^{z_{\alpha}} \boldsymbol{\Omega}_{1} dz' \right\} + O(\mu^{4})$$
(3.19)

Then, subtracting Equation 3.19 from Equation 3.18 will produce the expression of  $\boldsymbol{u}$  in terms of  $\boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha}$  as,

$$\boldsymbol{u} = \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} + \mu^{2} \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2} \right) \nabla S + \left( z_{\alpha} - z \right) \nabla T + \int_{z_{\alpha}}^{z} \boldsymbol{\Omega}_{1} dz' \right\} + O(\mu^{4}) \quad (3.20)$$

Since  $\boldsymbol{u}$  is the combined wave-current velocity, we can decompose it into separate ones. The underlying current velocity( $\boldsymbol{u}_{C}$ ) of arbitrary profile is assumed be constant in time, in the present study. Therefore, the horizontal vorticity of current will be of arbitrary shape and assumed to be of  $O(\mu^2)$ , i.e., weakly sheared according to Equation 3.16. The horizontal velocity of combined wave-current field is expressed as,

$$\boldsymbol{u} = \boldsymbol{u}_{W\alpha} + \boldsymbol{u}_{C\alpha}$$

$$+ \mu^2 \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^2 - z^2 \right) \nabla S + \left( z_{\alpha} - z \right) \nabla T + \int_{z_{\alpha}}^z \boldsymbol{\Omega}_1 dz' \right\}$$

$$+ O(\mu^4)$$
(3.21)

where  $\boldsymbol{u}_{W\alpha}$  and  $\boldsymbol{u}_{C\alpha}$  are the horizontal velocity vector at  $z = z_{\alpha}$  by waves and currents respectively, satisfying  $\boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} = \boldsymbol{u}_{W\alpha} + \boldsymbol{u}_{C\alpha}$ . Note that we used  $\boldsymbol{u}_{0} = \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} + O(\mu^{2})$  here. For the simplicity of calculation, we will use  $\boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha}$  instead of the decomposed ones.

Velocity of  $O(\mu^2)$  can also be interpreted as rotational and irrotational parts. From Equation 3.16,  $\int_{z_{\alpha}}^{z} \Omega_1 dz'$  is the rotational velocity which is generated either through the turbulent shear stress( $\tau$ ) or through the intrinsically sheared current( $u_C$ ) itself. Therefore it follows that

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} + \rho \nu_t^v \left( \boldsymbol{u}_C \right)_z = \rho \nu_t^v \left( \int_{z_\alpha}^z \boldsymbol{\Omega}_1 dz' \right)_z = \rho \nu_t^v \boldsymbol{\Omega}_1 \tag{3.22}$$

which also leads to

$$\boldsymbol{\Omega}_{1} = \frac{\boldsymbol{\tau}_{b}}{\rho \nu_{t}^{v}} \left(\frac{\zeta - z}{\zeta + h}\right) + \frac{\boldsymbol{\tau}_{bb}}{\rho \nu_{t}^{v}} \left(\frac{z + h}{\zeta + h}\right) + (\boldsymbol{u}_{C})_{z}$$
(3.23)

using Equation 3.10. The rotational velocity component of  $O(\mu^2)$  will be obtained through depth-integration of  $\Omega_1$ .

$$\int_{z_{\alpha}}^{z} \mathbf{\Omega}_{1} dz' = \frac{\tau_{b}}{\rho \nu_{t}^{\nu}} \frac{1}{\zeta + h} \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2} \right) + \zeta \left( z - z_{\alpha} \right) \right\} \\
+ \frac{\tau_{bb}}{\rho \nu_{t}^{\nu}} \frac{1}{\zeta + h} \left\{ -\frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2} \right) + h \left( z - z_{\alpha} \right) \right\} \\
+ \left( u_{C} - u_{C\alpha} \right)$$
(3.24)

By inserting Equation 3.24 into Equation 3.21, final structure of horizontal velocity can be written up to  $O(\mu^2)$ ,

$$\boldsymbol{u} = \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} + \mu^{2} \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2} \right) \nabla S + (z_{\alpha} - z) \nabla T \right\}$$

$$+ \mu^{2} \boldsymbol{\Psi} \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2} \right) + \zeta \left( z - z_{\alpha} \right) \right\}$$

$$+ \mu^{2} \boldsymbol{\Psi}_{b} \left\{ -\frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2} \right) + h \left( z - z_{\alpha} \right) \right\}$$

$$+ \mu^{2} \left( \boldsymbol{u}_{C} - \boldsymbol{u}_{C\alpha} \right) + O(\mu^{4})$$
(3.25)

in which  $\Psi = \tau_b / \{\rho \nu_t^v (\zeta + h)\}$  and  $\Psi_b = \tau_{bb} / \{\rho \nu_t^v (\zeta + h)\}$  are defined. Equation 3.25 reveals that we have three sources of horizontal vorticity, two of which are bottom friction and wave-current interaction while the remainder is the current's external shear.

The horizontal velocity profile can be utilized for deriving depth-integrated momentum equations. The remaining steps are somewhat tedious, so detailed procedures to derive a depth-integrated equation are included in Appendix D.

As a result, the depth-integrated momentum equation including the effects of bottominduced turbulence and wave-current interaction, can be written as,

$$(\boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha})_{t} + \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} + \nabla \zeta + \mu^{2} \left( \mathcal{H}^{p} + \mathcal{H}^{t} + \mathcal{H}^{c} + \overline{\boldsymbol{\xi}^{p}} + \overline{\boldsymbol{\xi}^{t}} + \overline{\boldsymbol{\xi}^{c}} \right)$$
  
$$- \alpha \mu \nabla \cdot \left( \nu_{t}^{h} \nabla \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \right) + \beta \mu \nu_{t}^{v} \nabla S + \beta \mu \frac{\boldsymbol{\tau}_{b}}{\rho(\zeta + h)} - \beta \mu \frac{\boldsymbol{\tau}_{bb}}{\rho(\zeta + h)}$$
  
$$- \beta \mu \nu_{t}^{v} \left\{ (\boldsymbol{u}_{C})_{z} |_{z=\zeta} - (\boldsymbol{u}_{C})_{z} |_{z=-h} \right\}$$
  
$$= O(\mu^{4}, \alpha \mu^{3}, \beta \mu^{3}) \qquad (3.26)$$

where

$$\mathcal{H}^{t} = \frac{(\zeta - h)}{2} (\Psi\zeta)_{t} - \frac{(\zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2})}{6} \Psi_{t} + \left[\Psi\left(\frac{z_{\alpha}^{2}}{2} - \zeta z_{\alpha}\right)\right]_{t}$$

$$+ \frac{(\zeta - h)}{2} \nabla \{u_{\alpha} \cdot (\Psi\zeta)\} - \frac{(\zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2})}{6} \nabla (u_{\alpha} \cdot \Psi)$$

$$+ \nabla \left[u_{\alpha} \cdot \left\{\Psi\left(\frac{1}{2}z_{\alpha}^{2} - \zeta z_{\alpha}\right)\right\}\right] - \Psi\left\{\frac{(\zeta^{2} - \zeta h - 2h^{2})S}{6} + \frac{(\zeta + h)T}{2}\right\}$$

$$- (\Psi_{b})_{t} \left\{\frac{1}{2}z_{\alpha}^{2} + hz_{\alpha} - \frac{(\zeta^{2} + 2\zeta h - 2h^{2})}{6}\right\}$$

$$- \left\{\frac{1}{2}z_{\alpha}^{2} - \frac{(\zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2})}{6}\right\} \nabla (u_{\alpha} \cdot \Psi_{b})$$

$$+ \nabla \{u_{\alpha} \cdot (\Psi_{b}h)\} \left\{\frac{1}{2}(\zeta - h) - z_{\alpha}\right\}$$

$$- \Psi_{b} \left\{\frac{(2\zeta^{2} + \zeta h - h^{2})S}{6} + \frac{(\zeta + h)T}{2}\right\}$$

$$(3.27)$$

$$\mathcal{H}^{p} = \frac{1}{2} z_{\alpha}^{2} \nabla S_{t} + z_{\alpha} \nabla T_{t} - \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( \zeta^{2} S_{t} \right) - \nabla \left( \zeta T_{t} \right) + T \nabla T$$
$$+ \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla S \right) + \nabla \left( z_{\alpha} \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla T \right) + \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( \zeta^{2} S^{2} \right)$$
$$- \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( \zeta^{2} \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla S \right) - \nabla \left( \zeta \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla T \right) + \nabla \left( \zeta T S \right)$$
(3.28)

$$\mathcal{H}^{c} = \frac{1}{\zeta + h} \nabla \left\{ \boldsymbol{u}_{W\alpha} \cdot \left( \int_{-h}^{\zeta} \boldsymbol{u}_{C} dz \right) \right\} - \nabla \left( \boldsymbol{u}_{W\alpha} \cdot \boldsymbol{u}_{C\alpha} \right) - \frac{\zeta S + T}{\zeta + h} \boldsymbol{u}_{C}|_{z=\zeta} - \frac{hS - T}{\zeta + h} \boldsymbol{u}_{C}|_{z=-h} + \frac{S}{\zeta + h} \left( \int_{-h}^{\zeta} \boldsymbol{u}_{C} dz \right)$$
(3.29)

Also  $\overline{\boldsymbol{\xi}^p} = \left(\overline{\xi^{p^x}}, \overline{\xi^{p^y}}\right), \ \overline{\boldsymbol{\xi}^t} = \left(\overline{\xi^{t^x}}, \overline{\xi^{t^y}}\right) \text{ and } \overline{\boldsymbol{\xi}^c} = \left(\overline{\xi^{c^x}}, \overline{\xi^{c^y}}\right) \text{ are described as}$ 

$$\overline{\xi^{p^{x}}} = -v_{\alpha} \left\{ (z_{\alpha})_{x} (z_{\alpha}S_{y} + T_{y}) - (z_{\alpha})_{y} (z_{\alpha}S_{x} + T_{x}) \right\}$$

$$- \left\{ (v_{\alpha})_{x} - (u_{\alpha})_{y} \right\} \left[ \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2}}{2} - \frac{(\zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2})}{6} \right\} S_{y} + \left\{ z_{\alpha} - \frac{(\zeta - h)}{2} \right\} T_{y} \right]$$
(3.30)

$$\overline{\xi}^{py} = u_{\alpha} \left\{ (z_{\alpha})_{x} (z_{\alpha}S_{y} + T_{y}) - (z_{\alpha})_{y} (z_{\alpha}S_{x} + T_{x}) \right\} 
+ \left\{ (v_{\alpha})_{x} - (u_{\alpha})_{y} \right\} \left[ \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2}}{2} - \frac{(\zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2})}{6} \right\} S_{x} + \left\{ z_{\alpha} - \frac{(\zeta - h)}{2} \right\} T_{x} \right]$$
(3.31)

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{\xi^{t^{x}}} &= -v_{\alpha} \left[ \left\{ \psi^{y} \left( \frac{1}{2} z_{\alpha}^{2} - z_{\alpha} \zeta \right) \right\}_{x} - \frac{\left( \zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2} \right)}{6} \left( \psi^{y} \right)_{x} + \frac{\left( \zeta - h \right)}{2} \left( \psi^{y} \zeta \right)_{x} \\ &- \left\{ \psi^{x} \left( \frac{1}{2} z_{\alpha}^{2} - z_{\alpha} \zeta \right) \right\}_{y} + \frac{\left( \zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2} \right)}{6} \left( \psi^{x} \right)_{y} - \frac{\left( \zeta - h \right)}{2} \left( \psi^{x} \zeta \right)_{y} \right] \\ &- \left\{ \left( v_{\alpha} \right)_{x} - \left( u_{\alpha} \right)_{y} \right\} \psi^{y} \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2}}{2} - z_{\alpha} \zeta + \frac{\left( 2\zeta^{2} - 2\zeta h - h^{2} \right)}{6} \right\} \\ &+ v_{\alpha} \left[ \left\{ \psi^{y}_{b} \left( \frac{1}{2} z_{\alpha}^{2} + z_{\alpha} h \right) \right\}_{x} + \frac{\left( \zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2} \right)}{6} \left( \psi^{y}_{b} \right)_{x} + \frac{\left( \zeta - h \right)}{2} \left( \psi^{y}_{b} h \right)_{x} \\ &- \left\{ \psi^{x}_{b} \left( \frac{1}{2} z_{\alpha}^{2} + z_{\alpha} h \right) \right\}_{y} + \frac{\left( \zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2} \right)}{6} \left( \psi^{x}_{b} \right)_{y} - \frac{\left( \zeta - h \right)}{2} \left( \psi^{x}_{b} h \right)_{y} \right] \\ &+ \left\{ \left( v_{\alpha} \right)_{x} - \left( u_{\alpha} \right)_{y} \right\} \psi^{y}_{b} \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2}}{2} + z_{\alpha} h - \frac{\left( 2\zeta^{2} + 2\zeta h - 2h^{2} \right)}{6} \right\} \end{aligned}$$
(3.32)

$$\overline{\xi^{t^{y}}} = u_{\alpha} \left[ \left\{ \psi^{y} \left( \frac{1}{2} z_{\alpha}^{2} - z_{\alpha} \zeta \right) \right\}_{x} - \frac{\left( \zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2} \right)}{6} (\psi^{y})_{x} + \frac{\left( \zeta - h \right)}{2} (\psi^{y} \zeta)_{x} \right. \\
\left. - \left\{ \psi^{x} \left( \frac{1}{2} z_{\alpha}^{2} - z_{\alpha} \zeta \right) \right\}_{y} + \frac{\left( \zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2} \right)}{6} (\psi^{x})_{y} - \frac{\left( \zeta - h \right)}{2} (\psi^{x} \zeta)_{y} \right] \\
\left. + \left\{ (v_{\alpha})_{x} - (u_{\alpha})_{y} \right\} \psi^{x} \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2}}{2} - z_{\alpha} \zeta + \frac{\left( 2\zeta^{2} - 2\zeta h - h^{2} \right)}{6} \right\} \right. \\
\left. - u_{\alpha} \left[ \left\{ \psi^{y}_{b} \left( \frac{1}{2} z_{\alpha}^{2} + z_{\alpha} h \right) \right\}_{x} + \frac{\left( \zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2} \right)}{6} (\psi^{y}_{b})_{x} + \frac{\left( \zeta - h \right)}{2} (\psi^{y}_{b} h)_{x} \right. \\
\left. - \left\{ \psi^{x}_{b} \left( \frac{1}{2} z_{\alpha}^{2} + z_{\alpha} h \right) \right\}_{y} + \frac{\left( \zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2} \right)}{6} (\psi^{x}_{b})_{y} - \frac{\left( \zeta - h \right)}{2} (\psi^{x}_{b} h)_{y} \right] \\
\left. - \left\{ \left( v_{\alpha} \right)_{x} - \left( u_{\alpha} \right)_{y} \right\} \psi^{x}_{b} \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2}}{2} + z_{\alpha} h - \frac{\left( 2\zeta^{2} + 2\zeta h - 2h^{2} \right)}{6} \right\} \right\}$$

$$(3.33)$$

$$\overline{\xi^{c^{x}}} = \frac{v_{\alpha}}{\zeta + h} \left\{ \left( \int_{-h}^{\zeta} u_{C} dz \right)_{y} - \zeta_{y} u_{C} |_{z=\zeta} - h_{y} u_{C} |_{z=-h} \right. \\ \left. - \left( \int_{-h}^{\zeta} v_{C} dz \right)_{x} + \zeta_{x} v_{C} |_{z=\zeta} + h_{x} v_{C} |_{z=-h} \right\} \\ \left. - \frac{1}{\zeta + h} \left\{ (v_{\alpha})_{x} - (u_{\alpha})_{y} \right\} \left( \int_{-h}^{\zeta} v_{C} dz \right) \right.$$
(3.34)

$$\overline{\xi^{c^{y}}} = \frac{u_{\alpha}}{\zeta + h} \left\{ \left( \int_{-h}^{\zeta} v_{C} dz \right)_{x} - \zeta_{x} v_{C} |_{z=\zeta} - h_{x} v_{C} |_{z=-h} - \left( \int_{-h}^{\zeta} u_{C} dz \right)_{y} + \zeta_{y} u_{C} |_{z=\zeta} + h_{y} u_{C} |_{z=-h} \right\} + \frac{1}{\zeta + h} \left\{ (v_{\alpha})_{x} - (u_{\alpha})_{y} \right\} \left( \int_{-h}^{\zeta} u_{C} dz \right)$$

$$(3.35)$$

Note that  $\boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} = (u_{\alpha}, v_{\alpha}), \ \boldsymbol{\Psi} = (\psi^x, \psi^y)$  and  $\boldsymbol{\Psi}_b = (\psi^x_b, \psi^y_b)$ . In Equation 3.34 and 3.35 Leibnitz rule had been applied, as well.

### 3.3.5 Depth-Integrated Continuity Equation for Waves and Currents

Since Equation 3.5 does not include nonlinear terms, depth integrated continuity equation can be obtained by fairly simple procedure. Integration of Equation 3.5 over the water column with applications of boundary conditions (Equation 3.8 and 3.9) gives

$$\nabla \cdot \int_{-h}^{\zeta} u dz + \zeta_t = 0 \tag{3.36}$$

where we used Leibnitz's rule for differentiating of integral terms.

Substituting Equation 3.25 into above equation will approximate this equation into depth-integrated one, yielding

$$\zeta_t + \nabla \left\{ \left(\zeta + h\right) \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \right\} + \mu^2 \left( \mathcal{N}^p + \mathcal{N}^t + \mathcal{N}^c \right) = O\left(\mu^4\right)$$
(3.37)

where

$$\mathcal{N}^{p} = -\nabla \cdot \left[ \left(\zeta + h\right) \left\{ \left( \frac{\zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2}}{6} - \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2}}{2} \right) \nabla S + \left( \frac{\zeta - h}{2} - z_{\alpha} \right) \nabla T \right\} \right]$$
(3.38)

$$\mathcal{N}^{t} = \nabla \cdot \left[ \Psi \left( \zeta + h \right) \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2}}{2} - z_{\alpha} \zeta + \frac{\left( 2\zeta^{2} - 2\zeta h - h^{2} \right)}{6} \right\} \right] - \nabla \cdot \left[ \Psi_{b} \left( \zeta + h \right) \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2}}{2} + z_{\alpha} h - \frac{\left( 2\zeta^{2} + 2\zeta h - 2h^{2} \right)}{6} \right\} \right]$$
(3.39)

$$\mathcal{N}^{c} = \nabla \cdot \left[ \int_{-h}^{\zeta} \boldsymbol{u}_{C} dz - (\zeta + h) \, \boldsymbol{u}_{C\alpha} \right]$$
(3.40)

## 3.3.6 Modulation of Dispersion Properties by Currents

Doppler shift is the effect of current on wave which should be included in wave-current models, and may be verified analytically(Chen et al.(1998)). In this section, Doppler shift

will be investigated through the comparison of dispersion property embedded in the governing equations, Equation 3.25, with the 'analytical' one. Assuming the steady current field and the linear wave system, the dispersion relationship can be derived analytically from the continuity Equation 3.37 and the momentum Equation 3.26. Subsequently, the linearized one dimensional depth-integrated governing equations in a constant depth under uniform current( $u_C = u_{C\alpha}$ ) are written as,

$$\zeta_t + h \left( u_{W\alpha} \right)_x + u_C \zeta_x + h^3 \left( \frac{1}{3} + \gamma \right) \left( u_{W\alpha} \right)_{xxx} = 0 \tag{3.41}$$

$$(u_{W\alpha})_t + u_C (u_{W\alpha})_x + g\zeta_x + h^2 \gamma \{(u_{W\alpha})_{xxt} + u_C (u_{W\alpha})_{xxx}\} = 0 \qquad (3.42)$$

where  $\gamma = (1/2) (z_{\alpha}/h)^2 + z_{\alpha}/h$ . All dimensions are recovered for the physical variables without using \*.

To obtain the linearized dispersion characteristics, we imagine sinusoidal waves propagating with an angular frequency  $\omega$  and wave number k, whose surface elevation and velocity are defined as,

$$\zeta = a_m \exp\left\{i(kx - \omega t)\right\} \tag{3.43}$$

$$u_{W\alpha} = u_m \exp\left\{i(kx - \omega t)\right\} \tag{3.44}$$

where  $a_m$  is wave amplitude and  $u_m$  is the maximum velocity. Inserting Equation 3.43 and 3.44 into Equations 3.41 and 3.42 presents linear dispersion relationship as follows.

$$\sigma^{2} = (\omega - u_{C}k)^{2} = ghk^{2} \frac{1 - \left(\frac{1}{3} + \gamma\right)(kh)^{2}}{1 - \gamma(kh)^{2}}$$
(3.45)

As mentioned by Nwogu(1993), the value of  $\gamma(=-2/5)$  would exactly confirm Doppler effect when compared to Pade(2,2) approximant of linear dispersion relation of first-order Stoke's theory, while some errors have been found in Chen et al.(1998) in some other Boussinesq models. For long waves in a range of  $kh < \pi$ , above approximation will give overall good agreement to exact linear dispersion with an error less than 5%, but the value of -0.39 for  $\gamma$  has been used for extended range of applicable kh and better accuracy. As a result, it is demonstrated that correct Doppler shift property retains in the equations.

### **3.3.7** Free parameter $(b^x, b^y)$

Reasonable estimation of free parameter  $(b^x, b^y)$  is not yet achieved in spite of a comprehensive effort by some researchers(e.g., Yang et al.(2006)). In this part, reasonable estimation for  $b^x$  will be attempted as well as  $b^y$ .

Following the procedures in You(1996), with the use of Reynolds stress defined in Equation 3.10, an empirical formula for assessment of  $b^x$  can be drawn out as,

(for following currents)

$$b^{x} = \frac{(H\omega)kh}{u_{*}|u_{*}|\sinh kh} \left( 0.004 \frac{H\omega}{\sinh kh} - 0.189|u_{*}| \right)$$
(3.46)

(for opposing currents)

$$b^{x} = \frac{(H\omega)kh}{u_{*}|u_{*}|\sinh kh} \left( 0.002 \frac{H\omega}{\sinh kh} - 0.111|u_{*}| \right)$$
(3.47)

In this estimation, the parameter  $b^x$  has a quadratic function of wave height with nonzero value of H at vertex. By intuition, this may not be reasonable since the magnitude of  $b^x$  would not be proportional to the wave height and the application of this estimation resulted in poor agreements. Moreover, for phase-resolving model, direct application of this estimation would be difficult unless the local wave characteristics(i.e.,  $H, k, \omega$ ) are known a prior. Therefore, an attempt to find an alternative way assessing  $b^x$  is made here.

The most two important factors governing wave-current interaction are considered as radiation stress of waves and bed shear stress by currents. Radiation stress  $S_{xx}$  (or momentum flux due to the the presence of waves) under the underlying currents are clearly defined in Jonsson et al.(1978), and using the pressure and velocity expressions(Equation D.2 and 3.25), it will be given as,

$$S_{xx} = \left\langle \int_{-h}^{\zeta} \left( p + \rho u^2 \right) dz \right\rangle - \frac{1}{2} \rho g \left( h + \langle \zeta \rangle \right)^2 - \rho \int_{-h}^{\zeta} u_C^2 dz$$
  

$$= \left\langle \frac{\rho}{6} \left( h + \zeta \right)^2 \left\{ 3g - 3(T_t + u_\alpha \cdot \nabla T - TS) + (S_t + u_\alpha \cdot \nabla S - S^2)(h - 2\zeta) \right\}$$
  

$$+ \left( S_t + u_\alpha \cdot \nabla S - S^2 \right)(h - 2\zeta) \right\}$$
  

$$+ \frac{\rho}{60} \left[ 15Y^2(\zeta + h) - 30Y(T_x)(\zeta^2 - h^2) + 10 \left\{ 2(T_x)^2 - (S_x)Y \right\} (\zeta^3 + h^3) + 15(S_x)(T_x)(\zeta^4 - h^4) + 3(S_x)^2(\zeta^5 + h^5) \right] \right\rangle$$
  

$$- \frac{1}{2} \rho g \left( h + \langle \zeta \rangle \right)^2 - \rho \int_{-h}^{\zeta} u_C^2 dz$$
(3.48)

which is ended up with well-known form when applying Airy theory in the absence of background currents.

$$S_{xx} = \frac{1}{8}\rho g H^2 \left[\frac{2kh}{\sinh 2kh} + \frac{1}{2}\right]$$
(3.49)

In Equation 3.48,  $\langle \rangle$  denotes phase-averaging and  $Y = 2u_{\alpha} + z_{\alpha}^2 S_x + 2z_{\alpha} T_x$ . As a reminder,  $S = \nabla \cdot (\boldsymbol{u}_{W\alpha} + \boldsymbol{u}_{C\alpha}), T = \nabla \cdot \{h(\boldsymbol{u}_{W\alpha} + \boldsymbol{u}_{C\alpha})\}$  and the velocity used here is 'potential' part of Equation 3.25. Radiation stress in y direction(stress normal to y-plane) can be obtained with the same procedure.

Here, Equation 3.48 would be preferred in phase-resolving model since Equation 3.46 and 3.47) may not be appropriate in the time-dependent frame such as Boussinesq-type equations. Radiation stress scaled on currents stress will represent relative strength of wave-average effects over the time-mean flow. Therefore, the linear relation between parameter  $b^x$  and relative radiation stress of waves can be assumed as

$$b^x = C_b \frac{S_{xx}}{\tau^x_{Cb}h} \tag{3.50}$$

where  $\tau_{Cb}^x$  is bottom stress by currents. The value of  $C_b$  will be assessed in Chapter 3.4.2.

## 3.4 Validation

In this section, three numerical tests will be performed to validate the present model. These numerical tests include the propagation of regular waves over uniform or depthvarying currents in a constant depth, and bichromatic waves traveling over spatially varying current field.

#### 3.4.1 Waves over Uniform or Linearly-varying Currents

In the first test, waves deformed by uniform and sheared currents are examined. Swan(1990) investigated a modification of the wave motion due to the current effects, in particular the sheared currents. Four different cases within the relatively shallow or intermediate depth regime  $(kh \leq 3.0)$  are chosen. Two of them include following currents while the rest include the opposing currents. The experimental parameters of waves and currents are listed in table 3.1. In CASE 1F and 1A, the current fields are essentially uniform throughout the water depth even though some shear may exist near the bottom. On the other hand, strong linear shear has been developed by honeycomb in CASE 2F and 2A,

Case	Wave height	Water depth	Wave period	$kh^a$	Current Profile
	$a_m$	h	T		$u_C$
$1\mathrm{F}$	$35.1\mathrm{mm}$	$0.35\mathrm{m}$	1.412s	0.88	$0.108 \mathrm{m/s}$
1A	$35.7\mathrm{mm}$	0.45m	$0.877 \mathrm{s}$	2.91	$-0.120 \mathrm{m/s}$
$2\mathrm{F}$	$31.5\mathrm{mm}$	$0.35\mathrm{m}$	1.418s	0.85	following, linear shear <sup><math>b</math></sup>
2A	$61.5\mathrm{mm}$	$0.35\mathrm{m}$	1.420s	1.10	opposing, linear shear $^{c}$

Table 3.1: Wave and Current Conditions in Swan(1990)'s Experiments

 $^a {\rm Calculated}$  from linear dispersion relationship with currents, i.e., Equation 3.1  $^b {\rm See}$  Figure 3.2 (a)

 $^c\mathrm{See}$  Figure 3.2 (b)

resulting in a current profiles shown in Figure 3.2. Such current conditions represent a low Froude number flow range ( $\approx 0.058 \sim 0.091$ ).

Numerical tests are performed based on the actual conditions of experiments with a fixed grid size  $\Delta x = 0.02$ m and a variable time step  $\Delta t$  according to CFL condition (0.4 in the present test). The current velocity is practically assumed to have no bottom boundary layer as the channel bed is covered with plate glass in the experiment. This allows us to simulate this case in the model without bottom-induced turbulence. Therefore, the rotational effect is generated solely by the sheared current.

Figure 3.3 through Figure 3.5 show the simulated results for each case along with the measured wave motions. The surface elevation and the oscillatory velocity in each figure have been measured at a location in the computational domain, at least 3 wave lengths far from the internal source of wave generation, during  $2\sim3$  wave periods as Swan(1990)'s attempt.

The velocity profiles at different depth levels are calculated using Equation 3.25. In the depth-uniform currents cases (Figure 3.3 and 3.4), the computed surface elevation and the velocity at different depth levels are generally in a good agreement with experiments



Figure 3.2: Measured shear currents in the absence of waves in Swan(1990); (a) CASE2F; (b) CASE2A

in both magnitude and phase, even though some errors are found in Figure 3.4 (d) which are mostly owing to larger kh value( $\approx 2.91$ ).

Computations agree well with the measurements for the case of opposing sheared current as shown in Figure 3.5. This demonstrates that the rotational behavior of currents needs to be taken into account when describing the velocity field in the combined flow of wave-current. The inclusion of the rotational terms due to the current's vorticity in Equation 3.25 represents practically its effects on the flow field. Furthermore, the maximum values of oscillatory velocities given in Figure 3.6 are in good agreements with the Stokes 3rd order solutions by Kishida and Sobey(1988). Therefore, this supports that the effects of sheared currents are appropriately included in the velocity profile as well as in the governing equations. As pointed out by Swan (1990), the conventional 'potential'



Figure 3.3: Comparison of wave records under following, uniform current (Case 1F) between experiment(o) and numerical solution(-): surface elevation(a) and oscillating velocities at z=-0.1m(b); at z=-0.2m(c); at z=-0.3m(d)



Figure 3.4: Comparison of wave records under opposing, uniform current (Case 1A) between experiment(o) and numerical solution(-): surface elevation(a) and oscillating velocities at z=-0.15m(b); at z=-0.25m(c); at z=-0.35m(d)



Figure 3.5: Comparison of wave records under opposing, linear shear current (Case 2A) between experiment(o) and numerical solution(-): surface elevation(a) and oscillating velocities at z=-0.1m(b); at z=-0.2m(c); at z=-0.3m(d)

approach is less descriptive for the general effect of current vorticity, even though the Doppler effects are relatively well captured through it.



Figure 3.6: Comparison of maximum wave velocity under following(a) and opposing(b) linear shear current; experiment(o), numerical solution(-)

### 3.4.2 Waves and Turbulent Currents with Bed Roughness

For the turbulent current cases, reasonable estimation for the parameter  $b^x$  is made to consider the wave-current interaction. Through experimental data of waves and turbulent currents, we can possibly assess an estimate for  $b^x$ . Kemp and Simons(1982, 1983) are providing various types of physical measurements including turbulent characteristics.

Case	Wave	Wave	Current	Current
No.	Height, $H(m)$	Period, $T(sec)$	Velocity, $u_{C\alpha}(m/s)$	Shear velocity, $u_C^*(m/s)$
WCA1	0.029	1.006	0.1983	0.00866
WCA3	0.0378	1.006	0.1983	0.00866
WCA4	0.0464	1.006	0.1983	0.00866
WCA5	0.0544	1.006	0.1983	0.00866
WDR1	0.0278	1.003	-0.1012	-0.00825
WDR3	0.0368	1.003	-0.1012	-0.00825
WDR4	0.045	1.003	-0.1012	-0.00825
WDR5	0.0487	1.003	-0.1012	-0.00825

Table 3.2: Wave and current characteristics in Kemp & Simons(1982, 1983)

They conducted experiments of the interaction between the wave and the turbulent current, either following or opposing direction in a 14.5m long, 0.457m wide and 0.69m deep channel. Test conditions listed in Table 3.2. They generated different bottom frictions for the turbulent currents in the experiments by using either gloss-painted bed or triangular wooden strips placed at bed.

Numerical simulations are set up using the actual scales of the experiments while using  $\Delta x = 0.01$ m and varying  $\Delta t$  for the stability(CFL  $\approx 0.4$ ). Such a small grid size(= 1/20h) will resolve the subdepth-scale motions of turbulence in depth-integrated model(Hinterberger et al.(2007)).

The primary issue in these simulations is the application of a reasonable value for  $b^x$ , in order to ensure the turbulent effect of the interaction between waves and currents. Based on Yang et al.(2006), an appropriate  $b^x$  value for an initial attempt in the simulation can be found. Then the final value of  $b^x$ , which gives reasonable fit to the measurement in each case can be found as seen in Figure 3.7 and 3.8. As anticipated, general features of  $b^x$  values are clearly seen from these results. The  $b^x$  becomes negative (or positive) in following current (or opposing current) with its magnitude proportional to the wave energy, i.e., radiation stress. It should be mentioned that the final values of  $b^x$  are little different from those in Yang(2006), since they employed 'idealized' log-law profile for currents for the best fitting, instead of using real values from Kemp and Simons(1982, 1983). In the present study, however, 'true' shear stresses are directly applied to the simulation.

Within this approach, the linear relationship between parameter  $b^x$  and the relative radiation stress( $S_{xx}/\tau_{Cb}^x h$ ) in Equation 3.50 can be reasonably estimated. Figure 3.9 depicts the variation of the parameter  $b^x$  with respect to the relative radiation stress. Indeed, there may exist two different ways to calculate  $S_{xx}$  in wave-current co-existing condition. The first way is by using Equation 3.48 and the other by completely ignoring the presence of the underlying currents, i.e., letting  $u_C = 0$  in Equation 3.48. As seen in the figure, however, clear correlation between the parameter  $b^x$  and the relative radiation stress can be found. This result is consistent with our assumption in Equation 3.50. Moreover for both cases, almost identical regressed lines about  $b^x$  values, each having either  $C_b =-0.007674$  or -0.00661, are obtained with minor errors. Meanwhile You(1996)'s empirical formulas(Equation 3.46 and 3.47) make inappropriate estimation as addressed before. Consequently,  $b^x$  values can be dynamically determined from the following equation, using local characteristics of waves and currents.

$$b^x = -0.00661 \frac{S_{xx}}{\tau^x_{Cb} h} \tag{3.51}$$



Figure 3.7: Mean-velocity profiles of combined waves and currents; (a)WCA1; (b)WCA3; (c)WCA4; (d)WCA5



Figure 3.8: Mean-velocity profiles of combined waves and currents; (a)WDR1; (b)WDR3; (c)WDR4; (d)WDR5

This equation opens, in the numerical implementation, a self-adaptive way to assess the parameter  $b^x$ . Finally, the turbulent wave-current interaction which fully depend on the local wave and current properties can be considered in the model.

#### 3.4.3 Bichromatic Waves and Uniform Currents in a Vayring Depth

A complex hydraulic situation is expected when bichromatic waves interact with the current as explored in Dong et al.(2009)' experiments. It is well known that bound long waves can be generated by the nonlinear wave-wave interactions in still water, but the influence of underlying currents on their generation is yet not totally understood. Dong et al.(2009) conducted laboratory experiments of bichromatic wave groups propagating over the current in wave flume of 50m length, 3m width(reduced to 0.8m in the experiment) and 1m depth. A smooth bed of varying slope is also considered at the flume bottom as depicted in Figure 3.10. A bichromatic wave is composed of two sinusoidal waves of same amplitude with different frequencies as shown below.

$$\zeta = a_1 \cos\left(k_1 x - 2\pi f_1 t\right) + a_2 \cos\left(k_2 x - 2\pi f_2 t\right) \tag{3.52}$$

where  $a_i, f_i$  and  $k_i (i = 1, 2)$  are the wave amplitudes, frequencies and wave numbers, respectively. Underlying currents will have either following or opposing directions to the wave propagation. It is also revealed from their measurements that the current variation along the changing depth can be effectively estimated from continuity and is almost depth-uniform. Thus, the current field is idealized through continuity in the simulation. The largest Froude number of currents in the experiments is 0.054 which ensures a weak


Figure 3.9: Distribution of parameter b according to radiation stress( $S_{xx}$  scaled by current bed stress( $\tau_{Cb}$ )); Fitted line is represented by solid and dashed line



Figure 3.10: Experimental setup of bichromatic waves under an ambient currents by Dong et al.(2009)

Table 3.3: Bichromatic waves and current characteristics in Dong et al.(2009)

$f_1(\mathrm{Hz})$	$f_2(\mathrm{Hz})$	$a_1(\mathrm{cm})$	$a_2(\mathrm{cm})$	Current(cm/s)
1.1	0.9	1.75	1.75	6, -6, 12, -12

current condition without hydraulic jump. Table 3.3 lists the details of the bichromatic waves and the current conditions used in the experiments.

Numerical simulation is set up based on the above information while using  $\Delta x = 0.01$ m and  $\Delta t$  corresponding to CFL (=0.4) conditions. Runtime is set to 200s and this ensures at least 100 bichromatic waves and 20 sub-harmonic long waves ( $f_1 - f_2 = 0.2$ Hz) are generated. To analyze the sub-harmonic bound long waves and obtain local wave amplitude, FFT(Fast Fourier Transform) technique is adopted using the same frequency rate(40Hz) as Dong et al.(2009). Figure 3.11 to 3.13 show simulation results compared with experimental data, presenting the spatial variation of  $H_{rms}$  along the flume. In Figure 3.11, which is the result of pure wave condition, calculated  $H_{rms}$  of both primary and bound long waves are in good agreement with experiments, as well as with the analytical solution derived by Longuet-Higgins and Stewart(1962). Also, the overall shoaling process due to the varying depth is well represented.



Figure 3.11: Spatial variation of ; (a)Hrms of bicromatic waves; (b)Amplitude of bounding long waves; (without currents)

For the following current conditions, both measured and calculated primary wave  $H_{rms}$  are clearly decreased by about 10% due to the Doppler shift effect as shown in Figure 3.12 (a). On the other hand, increased  $H_{rms}$  of primary waves are calculated for the opposing current case, and this is also consistent with the measurement in Figure 3.13. As seen from Figure 3.12 (b) and 3.13 (b), in both following and opposing current cases, Doppler effect is well characterized for sub-harmonic bound long waves.

Finally, to see the current effect on wave energy modulation clearly, calculated amplitude spectra of bichromatic waves are presented in Figure 3.14. It is revealed that some of wave energy at higher frequency component is relocated to the lower frequency for all cases. In the opposing current case, such tendency becomes most dramatic and this is consistent with Dong et al.(2009)'s observations.

Comparisons between wave amplitude spectra at three different location (x = 7m, 18m, and 24m) indicate also that as the waves propagate over shoaling depth, the sub-harmonic component energies develop for pure wave and for following current cases. Meanwhile, it is not obvious for the opposing current case because relatively strong current exists at shallower depth.

#### 3.5 Summary

A set of depth-integrated equations describing combined wave-current flows is derived in this chapter. It is well known that the presence of waves over the mean flow introduces additional stresses. With a parameter  $\boldsymbol{b}$ , a linear shear profile can be defined to represent such stresses by wave-current interaction.



Figure 3.12: Spatial variation of ; (a)Hrms of bicromatic waves; (b)Amplitude of bounding long waves; (following currents)



Figure 3.13: Spatial variation of ; (a)Hrms of bicromatic waves; (b)Amplitude of bounding long waves;(opposing currents)



Figure 3.14: Calculated amplitude spectra of bichromatic waves with and without currents

Doppler shift effect embedded in a system of equations is elucidated by limiting the equations into one dimensional linear case. It is confirmed that Doppler shift property retains in the equation set.

To implement the present model numerically, a fourth-order MUSCL-TVD scheme incorporated with approximated Riemann solver, is adopted for leading order terms whereas a cell-averaged finite volume method is utilized for higher-order terms. Accuracy of the model is then examined through three experimental data sets. The simulated results on long waves propagating over either uniform or sheared current, agree well with the measurements. It is found that the vorticity of the current needs to be taken into account when describing the velocity of wave-current flows more accurately. Through the inclusion of rotational terms in the velocity profiles, we're able to practically consider the effects of current's vorticity on the flow field.

Validity of the inclusion of additional stress term is also investigated through the simulation on turbulent current interacting with waves. Using Kemp and Simons(1982, 1983)'s experimental data, reasonable estimation of parameter  $\boldsymbol{b}$  is provided. Based on provided values,  $\boldsymbol{b}$  has been physically defined through linear relationship with relative radiation stress of waves.

As a final attempt, the model is applied to a complex configuration, where bichromatic waves interact with spatially varying currents. Subharmonic bound long waves generated by wave-wave interaction are well recreated in the presence of background currents and the comparisons with measurements show good agreements. Consequently, the results clearly indicate that the present model is capable of predicting both wave and current flows accurately.

### Chapter 4

# A Depth-Integrated Model for Free Surface Waves Propagating over Fluids with Weak Vertical and Horizontal Density Variation

In this chapter, we consider the density change of fluids in the depth-integrated long wave model. By allowing horizontal and vertical variation of fluid density, a depth-integrated model for long gravity waves over variable density fluid has been developed, where density change effects are included as correction terms. In particular, two-layer fluid system is chosen as vertical density variations, where interfacial wave effects on the free surface is accounted for through direct inclusion of velocity component of the interfacial wave. For the numerical implementation of the model, a finite volume scheme coupled with approximate Riemann solver is adopted for leading order terms while cell-centered finite volume methods are utilized for others.

Numerical tests have been performed to verify the model, in which the density field is configured to vary either horizontally or vertically. For horizontal variation of fluid density, a pneumatic breakwater system is simulated and fair agreement is observed between computed and measured data, showing that the current induced by the upward bubble flux is responsible for wave attenuation to some degree. To investigate the effects of internal motions on the free surface, a two-layer fluid system with monochromatic internal wave motion is tested numerically. Comparison of simulated results with measured and analytical data shows good agreement. Lastly, nonlinear interaction between externaland internal-mode surface waves are studied numerical and analytically, and the model is shown to have nonlinear accuracy similar to published Boussinesq-type models.

# 4.1 Introduction

Freshwater and seawater are often coexisting in the estuaries in the coastal regions. Thus the fluid densities are subject to change horizontally and vertically due to thermal and saline changes. This density variation will result in complex physical processes on the contrary to the uniform density fluids. For example, in the horizontally varying density fluids, the hydrostatic pressure will be imbalanced between the fluids and this pressure difference will cause the fluid to move. Armi and Farmer (1986) provide an example of the exchange of the two fluids through the contraction, and Wood (1970) provides an example of the classical lock-exchange problems. Moreover, in the density varying flow, the momentum needed to convey the lighter fluid is less, and that implies a significant change in the kinematics of the problem.

On the other hand, the density variation inherently implies a three dimensional problem in the natural oceanic system Mellor (1991). Therefore, the 3D hydrodynamic model coupled with the density transport model is commonly adopted for the simulation of the variable density fluid flows (e.g., Kanarsk and Maderich 2003).

Different approaches have been made to solve this problem. For instance, in the horizontally varying density flows, the initial setup of the horizontally separated two fluids with different densities is assumed to study the gravity current generated at the lock-exchange configurations (e.g., Lowe et al. (2005)), or in the bi-directional flows through contractions (e.g., Armi and Farmer (1986)). Those studies focused on the internal physics of the problem such as the diffusion and the mixing caused by the barotropic forces. Recently, Leighton et al.(2010) examined the effect of the horizontally varying density conditions on the free surface physics. They presented one-phase, one-dimensional model for vertically well-mixed shallow flows with horizontal density gradient; however, they neglected the vertical variation of the fluid density.

In the vertically stratified fluids, they are usually simplified to a two-layer system with different densities as in the estuarine system. In the stable stratification, there will be no driving force and therefore the two fluids will stay without any motion. However, if an initial disturbance is introduced at the interface, this disturbance will propagate as an oscillating form in order to keep the balance between the gravity and the buoyancy. Meanwhile, this internal motion will affect the hydrodynamics of the entire water column including the free surface.

Topographical configuration could act as a source for internal wave generation at the interface of the two-layer system (e.g., Farmer and Armi(1999), Helfrich and Melville(2006)). Researchers are interested in the physical properties of these internal waves such as amplitude and frequency dispersion without compromising the free surface waves. They

imposed the rigid-lid assumption on the upper boundary condition, thus they simplified the relevant physical problem in order to focus solely on the internal wave physics (e.g., Evans and Ford(1996)). Numerous models have been developed for investigating the internal wave propagation over the shallow and the deep waters applying the rigid-lid assumption (Koop and Butler(1981), Segur and Hammack(1982), Choi and Camassa(1999), Debsarma et al.(2010)).

However, there are some evidences showing that sub-surface movement can affect the free surface. For instance, the theoretical studies of Lamb(1932), Phillips(1977), Hwung et al.(2009) and the experiment by Umeyama(2002) which shows the surface wave excitation by internal waves. Moreover, the observation by Elachi and Apel(1976) have confirmed the importance of including the free surface. Although some numerical models apply the free surface condition for long internal waves (Choi and Camassa(1996), Părău and Dias(2001), Lynett and Liu(2002b), Nguyen and Dias(2008), Liu and Wang(2012)), they did not consider the free surface dynamics appropriately.

In reality there are many occasions where the free surface gravity waves exist with internal waves and interact with each other. Therefore, nonlinear interactions between internal and surface waves have also been explored in the literatures experimentally (Lewis et al.(1974), Joyce(1974)) and theoretically(Ma(1982), Donato(1999), Liu(2006), Selezov et al.(2010), Craig et al.(2011)). Triad resonance interaction is investigated in (Alam(2012), Hill and Foda(1998)). Most of the previously mentioned numerical models solve the two sets of equations, which are generated from the two-layer fluid system. This will require more computational time and resources than the one equation set (Lynett and Liu(2004)). The depth-integrated approach, for the shallow water regime has been well established for the past few decades. The vertical structure of some physical quantities such as velocity and pressure fields is represented by polynomials and successfully describes the long wave formulations.

In the present study, for the purpose of efficiently but physically accurate modeling of surface waves over varying density, a new attempt based on depth-integration has been made. This attempt will include the effects on the surface waves by density variation as well as internal motions at the interface of two immiscible fluids with different densities. Density-variation effects on the free surface are included as correction terms in the Boussinesq-type models. The internal wave effect on the free surface is considered through direct inclusion of internal wave kinematics as weak components of the velocity profile. Long wave assumptions for both surface and internal waves are also implemented in the model derivation. Thus, the present model is designed to study the problem of long wave propagation over the density-varying fluids.

This chapter is organized as follows. In the following section, depth-integrated model equations for long surface waves over variable density fluid are derived mathematically. Then, the model is applied to the surface wave propagation over either horizontally or vertically varying density fluids. An exercise to investigate nonlinear property of the designed model has been also performed as surface and internal wave interactions. The results are then compared with experimental and analytical data for the validation. Final conclusion is made in subsection 4.5.

# 4.2 Mathematical Formulation

A mathematical model for weakly dispersive wave propagation over a varying-density fluid is derived in this section. A standard Boussinesq-type approach (e.g., Lynett and Liu(2002a), Kim et al.(2009)) is followed during the derivation to obtain a verticallyindependent equation set. Worthy of note here is that we use the term 'Boussinesq' as related to weakly dispersive and nonlinear; we are not implying the same namesake commonly referenced in the oceanography field when including buoyancy effects.

#### 4.2.1 Governing Physics and Boundary Conditions

To derive a mathematical governing system of equations, the basic physical parameters are defined as in Figure 4.1. A two-layer fluid stably separated by a small, but finite, thickness pycnocline is assumed to be incompressible and immiscible. Appropriate parametric scales are now introduced to normalize the governing equations as well as boundary conditions. Typical for long wave scaling,  $\ell_0$  and  $h_0$ , the wavelength and water depth, are used for horizontal and vertical coordinates, respectively. Additionally,  $\rho_b$  is a characteristic fluid density of the entire fluid system. Using this set of scaling parameters, normalized variables are introduced as,

$$(x,y) = \frac{(x',y')}{\ell_0}, \qquad z = \frac{z'}{h_0}, \qquad \zeta = \frac{\zeta'}{h_0}, \qquad h = \frac{h'}{h_0}, \qquad t = \frac{t'\sqrt{gh_0}}{\ell_0},$$
$$(u,v) = \frac{(u',v')}{\sqrt{gh_0}}, \qquad w = \frac{w'}{\mu\sqrt{gh_0}}, \qquad p = \frac{p'}{\rho_b gh_0}, \qquad \rho = \frac{\rho'}{\rho_b},$$
$$\mu = \frac{h_0}{\ell_0}, \qquad \nu_t^h = \frac{\nu_t^{h'}}{\alpha h_0 \sqrt{gh_0}}, \qquad \nu_t^v = \frac{\nu_t^{v'}}{\beta h_0 \sqrt{gh_0}}$$
(4.1)

where a prime denotes dimensional variable, (u, v) and w represents instantaneous horizontal and vertical velocity, respectively.  $\zeta$  is free-surface elevation which is a function of (x,y,t), p is pressure, g is gravitational acceleration and  $\rho$  is density. Dimensionless parameters  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are used to scale the horizontal and vertical eddy viscosities  $\nu_t^h$  and  $\nu_t^v$  (Kim et al.(2009)), and velocities are scaled following long wave theory. Note that



Figure 4.1: Sketch of long wave propagation over two-layer fluids with horizontal density variation

To examine the effects of spatially variable density on free surface waves, it is necessary to parameterize the magnitude of the density change. The parameter  $\gamma$  is introduced for quantifying the density variation, and is given as

$$\gamma = \frac{\Delta \rho'}{\rho_b} \tag{4.2}$$

The term  $\Delta \rho'$  is simply the characteristic density variation in the physical system to be examined.

Following Kim and Lynett (2011), the dimensionless form of the spatially-filtered continuity and Navier-Stokes equations for incompressible flow are

$$\nabla \cdot \boldsymbol{u} + w_z = 0 \tag{4.3}$$

$$\rho\left(\boldsymbol{u}_{t}+\boldsymbol{u}\cdot\nabla\boldsymbol{u}+w\boldsymbol{u}_{z}\right)+\nabla p=\alpha\mu\nabla\cdot\left(\rho\nu_{t}^{h}\nabla\boldsymbol{u}\right)+\frac{\beta}{\mu}\left(\rho\nu_{t}^{v}\boldsymbol{u}_{z}\right)_{z}$$
(4.4)

$$\mu^{2}\rho\left(w_{t}+\mu^{2}\boldsymbol{u}\cdot\nabla\boldsymbol{w}+\mu^{2}\boldsymbol{w}\boldsymbol{w}_{z}\right)+p_{z}+\rho=\alpha\mu^{3}\nabla\cdot\left(\rho\nu_{t}^{h}\nabla\boldsymbol{w}\right)+\beta\mu\left(\rho\nu_{t}^{v}\boldsymbol{w}_{z}\right)_{z}$$
(4.5)

where  $\nabla$  is the horizontal derivative operator, subscripts z and t function as vertical and time differentiations, respectively, and  $\boldsymbol{u} = (u, v)$  is the horizontal velocity vector.

Conditions applied at free surface and at bottom boundaries in Fig 4.1 are expressed in dimensionless form, as well:

$$w = \zeta_t + \boldsymbol{u} \cdot \nabla \zeta \quad \text{at} \quad z = \zeta$$

$$\tag{4.6}$$

$$w + \boldsymbol{u} \cdot \nabla h = 0 \quad \text{at} \quad z = -h$$

$$\tag{4.7}$$

Equations 4.3 to 4.7 represent the primitive equation set needed to describe the fluid motion shown in Figure 4.1.

# 4.2.2 Derivation of Boussinesq-type Equations for Dispersive Waves over Variable Density Fluid

With a few dimensionless parameters introduced,  $\mu^2$  is chosen to expand the physical variables. The assumption is made that the effect of density stratification and viscosity are as weak, and of a similar order as dispersion. That is,

$$O(\mu^2) = O(\mu\beta, \gamma) \ll 1 \tag{4.8}$$

The physical parameters, p, u, v, w are expanded as power series of  $\mu^2$ ,

$$f = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \mu^{2n} f_n.$$
 (4.9)

The leading order terms of Equation 4.5 yields the hydrostatic condition,

$$(p_0)_z + \rho_0 = 0 \tag{4.10}$$

which accordingly guarantees,

$$u(x, y, z, t) = u_0(x, y, t) + O(\mu^2)$$
(4.11)

Integrating the continuity equation over depth and applying the free surface and bottom boundary conditions, Equations 4.6 and 4.7, will give the relationship between horizontal and vertical velocities as,

$$w_0 = -z \left(\nabla \cdot \boldsymbol{u}_0\right) - \nabla \cdot \left(h\boldsymbol{u}_0\right) = -zS - T \tag{4.12}$$

In order to determine the horizontal velocity profile, horizontal vorticity( $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ ) is examined

$$\omega' = u'_{z} - \nabla w' = \mu^{2} \sqrt{\frac{g}{h_{0}}} \omega_{1} + O(\mu^{4})$$
(4.13)

which demonstrates that horizontal vorticity can at most first appear at  $O(\mu^2)$  within our scaling. Assuming that  $\omega_1$  is not zero permits rotational effects induced by bottom stress to be directly included in the velocity profile (Kim et al.(2009)).

From the horizontal vorticity expression, the vertical profile of horizontal velocity can be approximated by vertically integrating  $\omega_1$  from -h to z,

$$\boldsymbol{u}_{1} = \boldsymbol{u}_{1}|_{z=-h} - \left\{ \left( \frac{1}{2} z^{2} \nabla S + z \nabla T \right) - \left( \frac{1}{2} h^{2} \nabla S - h \nabla T \right) \right\} + \int_{-h}^{z} \boldsymbol{\omega}_{1} dz + O(\mu^{2})$$

$$(4.14)$$

The integral of vorticity term appearing above remains as a "residual" velocity component, and can be specified depending on the particular physics of the configuration at hand (e.g. bottom or free surface stress, or stratification effects). The horizontal velocity up to  $O(\mu^2)$  can be then expressed as,

$$u = u_{0} + \mu^{2} \left\{ u_{1}|_{z=-h} - \frac{1}{2}z^{2}\nabla S - z\nabla T + \frac{1}{2}h^{2}\nabla S - h\nabla T + \int_{-h}^{z} \omega_{1}dz \right\} + O(\mu^{4})$$
(4.15)

and following Nwogo's (1993) approach , we can define  $\boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha}$  evaluated at  $z=z_{\alpha}$  as,

$$\boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} = \boldsymbol{u}_{0} + \mu^{2} \left\{ \boldsymbol{u}_{1}|_{z=-h} - \frac{1}{2} z_{\alpha}^{2} \nabla S - z_{\alpha} \nabla T + \frac{1}{2} h^{2} \nabla S - h \nabla T \right.$$

$$\left. + \int_{-h}^{z_{\alpha}} \boldsymbol{\omega}_{1} dz \right\} + O(\mu^{4})$$

$$(4.16)$$

Subtracting Equation 4.16 from Equation 4.15 finalizes the expression of u in terms of  $u_{\alpha}$  as,

$$\boldsymbol{u} = \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} + \mu^{2} \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2} \right) \nabla S + (z_{\alpha} - z) \nabla T + \int_{z_{\alpha}}^{z} \boldsymbol{\omega}_{1} dz \right\} + O(\mu^{4}) \quad (4.17)$$

As a main purpose of this study is to extend the derivation to include internal motion due to stratification, the horizontal velocity of the background internal motion,  $u^{i}(z)$ , should be included. Here, this component is interpreted as part of the residual vorticity acting on the barotropic wave, i.e.

$$\int_{z_{\alpha}}^{z} \boldsymbol{\omega}_{1} dz = \boldsymbol{u}^{i}(z) + \int_{z_{\alpha}}^{z} \boldsymbol{\omega}_{1}^{s} dz$$
(4.18)

where  $\boldsymbol{\omega}_1^s$  represents the horizontal vorticity due to a bottom stress only. This decomposition yields

$$u = u_{\alpha} + \mu^{2} u^{i}(z)$$

$$+ \mu^{2} \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2} \right) \nabla S + (z_{\alpha} - z) \nabla T + \int_{z_{\alpha}}^{z} \omega_{1}^{s} dz \right\}$$

$$+ O(\mu^{4})$$
(4.19)

Note that in the above, it is implicitly admitted that  $O(\gamma) = O(\mu^2)$ , as  $u^i(z)$  is usually scaled by reduced gravity (e.g., Lynett and Liu(2002b)). As a result, the direct inclusion of density-driven internal kinematics into the velocity structure allows for consideration internal motion effects on free surface waves. While the above expression is flexible in terms of the  $u^i(z)$  that can be accommodated, the theory is only valid if the magnitude of this component is small.

For a quantitative description of  $\boldsymbol{u}^{i}(z)$ , specific cases will be chosen later for verification. Regardless, the horizontal velocity with rotational terms $(\int_{z_{\alpha}}^{z} \boldsymbol{\omega}_{1}^{s} dz')$  remains undetermined; these rotational terms are assumed related only to bottom stress $(\boldsymbol{\tau})$  (i.e. Kim et al.(2009)). Imposing a linear stress profile from zero at the free surface to  $\boldsymbol{\tau}_{b}$  at the bed,

$$\boldsymbol{\omega}_1^s = \frac{\boldsymbol{\tau}_b}{\rho \nu_t^v} \left( \frac{\zeta - z}{\zeta + h} \right), \tag{4.20}$$

is all the information required. Integration of  $\omega_1^s$  produces a rotational velocity component of  $O(\mu^2)$  as follows,

$$\int_{z_{\alpha}}^{z} \omega_1^s dz' = \Psi \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^2 - z^2 \right) + \zeta \left( z - z_{\alpha} \right) \right\}$$
(4.21)

where  $\Psi = \tau_b / \{ \rho \nu_t^v (\zeta + h) \}.$ 

With this, horizontal velocity up to  $O(\mu^2)$  can be finally expressed as,

$$\boldsymbol{u} = \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} + \mu^{2} \boldsymbol{u}^{i} + \mu^{2} \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2} \right) \nabla S + (z_{\alpha} - z) \nabla T \right\}$$

$$+ \mu^{2} \Psi \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2} \right) + \zeta \left( z - z_{\alpha} \right) \right\}$$

$$+ O(\mu^{4})$$

$$(4.22)$$

Utilizing the horizontal velocity profile above, the exact continuity equation can be given in a depth-integrated format. Integrating Equation 4.3 from -h to  $\zeta$  and applying boundary conditions(Equation 4.6 and 4.7) gives,

$$\nabla \cdot \int_{-h}^{\zeta} \boldsymbol{u} d\boldsymbol{z} + \zeta_t = 0 \tag{4.23}$$

To express this equation in terms of  $u_{\alpha}$ , Equation 4.22 is substituted, and after manipulation yields

$$\zeta_t + \nabla \cdot \{(\zeta + h) \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha}\} + \mu^2 \left(\mathcal{N}_D + \mathcal{N}_B + \mathcal{N}_I\right) = O(\mu^4)$$
(4.24)

where the second order terms are,

$$\mathcal{N}_D = -\nabla \cdot \left[ \left(\zeta + h\right) \left\{ \left( \frac{\zeta^2 - \zeta h + h^2}{6} - \frac{z_\alpha^2}{2} \right) \nabla S + \left( \frac{\zeta - h}{2} - z_\alpha \right) \nabla T \right\} \right]$$
(4.25)

$$\mathcal{N}_B = \nabla \cdot \left[ \psi \left( \zeta + h \right) \left\{ \frac{z_\alpha^2}{2} - z_\alpha \zeta + \frac{\left( 2\zeta^2 - 2\zeta h - h^2 \right)}{6} \right\} \right]$$
(4.26)

$$\mathcal{N}_{I} = \nabla \cdot \left\{ \left( \zeta + h \right) \overline{\boldsymbol{u}^{i}} \right\}$$
(4.27)

where  $\overline{u^i}$  is the depth-averaged horizontal velocity vector due to internal motion.

While integration of the continuity equation was straightforward, derivation of a depth-integrated momentum equation, however, needs a fairly complex procedure due to nonlinearity in the equation and the desired removal (through substitution) of the hydrodynamic pressure term. To facilitate the final expression of our equations in a closed (non-integral) form, the first functional restriction will be placed on the internal density field. Here a simple vertical density structure is assumed, however realistic enough to resemble a physical configuration found commonly in oceans and lakes (e.g. Kao et al.(1985)). A two-layer density profile is thereby specified as,

$$\rho(x, y, z) = \rho_0(x, y) \left\{ 1 - \gamma \tanh\left(\frac{z - z_0}{\delta}\right) \right\}$$
(4.28)

where  $\rho_0$  is some average density of the two-layer system,  $z_0$  is the midpoint of the tanh inflection separating the upper and lower layers, and  $\delta$  is the finite transition pychocline thickness. Note that all terms in the above density profile expression are dimensionless; density has been scaled by  $\rho_b$  and the three distance terms inside the *tanh* operator have been scaled by the depth, h. A discrete two-layer density configuration thus can be accommodated using the tanh function, eliminating any density discontinuity issues.

The steps to derive a final, depth-integrated equation are somewhat tedious, and are included in detail in Appendix F. The resultant form of the depth-integrated momentum equation appears as,

$$(\boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha})_{t} + \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} + \nabla \zeta + \frac{\nabla \rho_{0}}{\rho_{0}} \frac{(\zeta + h)}{2} + \gamma \mathcal{R}_{P}^{v}$$

$$+ \mu^{2} \left( \mathcal{R}_{D} + \mathcal{R}_{B} + \mathcal{R}_{I} + \mathcal{R}_{P}^{h} + \overline{\boldsymbol{\xi}} \right)$$

$$- \alpha \mu \frac{1}{\rho_{0}} \nabla \cdot \left( \rho_{0} \nu_{t}^{h} \nabla \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \right) + \beta \mu \nu_{t}^{v} \nabla S$$

$$+ \beta \mu \frac{1}{\rho_{0}} \frac{\boldsymbol{\tau}_{b}}{\zeta + h} - \beta \mu \nu_{t}^{v} \left\{ \left( \boldsymbol{u}^{i} \right)_{z} |_{z=\zeta} - \left( \boldsymbol{u}^{i} \right)_{z} |_{z=-h} \right\}$$

$$= O(\mu^{4}, \alpha \mu^{3}, \beta \mu^{3}) \qquad (4.29)$$

in which the higher order terms are defined as,

$$\mathcal{R}_{D} = \frac{1}{2} z_{\alpha}^{2} \nabla S_{t} + z_{\alpha} \nabla T_{t} - \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( \zeta^{2} S_{t} \right) - \nabla \left( \zeta T_{t} \right) + T \nabla T$$

$$+ \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla S \right) + \nabla \left( z_{\alpha} \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla T \right) + \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( \zeta^{2} S^{2} \right)$$

$$- \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( \zeta^{2} \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla S \right) - \nabla \left( \zeta \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla T \right) + \nabla \left( \zeta T S \right)$$

$$(4.30)$$

$$\mathcal{R}_{B} = \frac{(\zeta - h)}{2} (\Psi\zeta)_{t} - \frac{(\zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2})}{6} \Psi_{t} + \left[ \Psi\left(\frac{z_{\alpha}^{2}}{2} - \zeta z_{\alpha}\right) \right]_{t}$$

$$+ \frac{(\zeta - h)}{2} \nabla \{ u_{\alpha} \cdot (\Psi\zeta) \} - \frac{(\zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2})}{6} \nabla (u_{\alpha} \cdot \Psi)$$

$$+ \nabla \left[ u_{\alpha} \cdot \left\{ \Psi\left(\frac{1}{2}z_{\alpha}^{2} - \zeta z_{\alpha}\right) \right\} \right] - \Psi \left\{ \frac{(\zeta^{2} - \zeta h - 2h^{2})S}{6} + \frac{(\zeta + h)T}{2} \right\}$$

$$(4.31)$$

$$\mathcal{R}_{I} = \overline{\boldsymbol{u}_{t}^{i}} + \nabla \left( \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \overline{\boldsymbol{u}^{i}} \right)$$
(4.32)

$$\mathcal{R}_{P}^{h} = \frac{\nabla \rho_{0}}{\rho_{0}} \left\{ \frac{-2\zeta + h}{6} \left( S_{t} + \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla S - S^{2} \right) - \frac{1}{2} \left( T_{t} + \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla T - ST \right) \right\}$$
(4.33)

$$\mathcal{R}_{P}^{v} = \frac{\delta}{\zeta + h} \left\{ (\boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha})_{t} + \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \right\} \times \left[ \ln \left\{ \cosh \left( \frac{-h - z_{0}}{\delta} \right) \right\} - \ln \left\{ \cosh \left( \frac{\zeta - z_{0}}{\delta} \right) \right\} \right] - \frac{1}{\rho_{0}} \nabla \left\{ \rho_{0} \delta \ln \cosh \left( \frac{\zeta - z_{0}}{\delta} \right) \right\} + \frac{1}{\rho_{0}} \frac{1}{\zeta + h} \int_{-h}^{\zeta} \nabla \left\{ \rho_{0} \delta \ln \cosh \left( \frac{z - z_{0}}{\delta} \right) \right\} dz$$
(4.34)

And  $\overline{\boldsymbol{\xi}} = \left(\overline{\xi^x}, \overline{\xi^y}\right)$  are described as

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{\xi^{x}} &= -v_{\alpha} \left\{ (z_{\alpha})_{x} (z_{\alpha}S_{y} + T_{y}) - (z_{\alpha})_{y} (z_{\alpha}S_{x} + T_{x}) \right\} \end{aligned}$$
(4.35)  

$$- \left\{ (v_{\alpha})_{x} - (u_{\alpha})_{y} \right\} \left[ \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2}}{2} - \frac{(\zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2})}{6} \right\} S_{y} + \left\{ z_{\alpha} - \frac{(\zeta - h)}{2} \right\} T_{y} \right] \end{aligned}$$
  

$$- v_{\alpha} \left[ \left\{ \psi^{y} \left( \frac{1}{2} z_{\alpha}^{2} - z_{\alpha} \zeta \right) \right\}_{x} - \frac{(\zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2})}{6} (\psi^{y})_{x} + \frac{(\zeta - h)}{2} (\psi^{y} \zeta)_{x} \right.$$
  

$$- \left\{ \psi^{x} \left( \frac{1}{2} z_{\alpha}^{2} - z_{\alpha} \zeta \right) \right\}_{y} + \frac{(\zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2})}{6} (\psi^{x})_{y} - \frac{(\zeta - h)}{2} (\psi^{x} \zeta)_{y} \right]$$
  

$$- \left\{ (v_{\alpha})_{x} - (u_{\alpha})_{y} \right\} \psi^{y} \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2}}{2} - z_{\alpha} \zeta + \frac{(2\zeta^{2} - 2\zeta h - h^{2})}{6} \right\}$$
  

$$+ v_{\alpha}^{i} \left\{ (v_{\alpha})_{x} - (u_{\alpha})_{y} \right\}$$

$$\overline{\xi^{y}} = u_{\alpha} \left\{ (z_{\alpha})_{x} (z_{\alpha}S_{y} + T_{y}) - (z_{\alpha})_{y} (z_{\alpha}S_{x} + T_{x}) \right\}$$

$$(4.36)$$

$$+ \left\{ (v_{\alpha})_{x} - (u_{\alpha})_{y} \right\} \left[ \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2}}{2} - \frac{(\zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2})}{6} \right\} S_{x} + \left\{ z_{\alpha} - \frac{(\zeta - h)}{2} \right\} T_{x} \right]$$

$$+ u_{\alpha} \left[ \left\{ \psi^{y} \left( \frac{1}{2} z_{\alpha}^{2} - z_{\alpha} \zeta \right) \right\}_{x} - \frac{(\zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2})}{6} (\psi^{y})_{x} + \frac{(\zeta - h)}{2} (\psi^{y} \zeta)_{x}$$

$$- \left\{ \psi^{x} \left( \frac{1}{2} z_{\alpha}^{2} - z_{\alpha} \zeta \right) \right\}_{y} + \frac{(\zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2})}{6} (\psi^{x})_{y} - \frac{(\zeta - h)}{2} (\psi^{x} \zeta)_{y} \right]$$

$$+ \left\{ (v_{\alpha})_{x} - (u_{\alpha})_{y} \right\} \psi^{x} \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2}}{2} - z_{\alpha} \zeta + \frac{(2\zeta^{2} - 2\zeta h - h^{2})}{6} \right\}$$

$$+ u_{\alpha}^{i} \left\{ (u_{\alpha})_{y} - (v_{\alpha})_{x} \right\}$$

where  $\boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} = (u_{\alpha}, v_{\alpha})$  and  $\boldsymbol{\Psi} = (\psi^x, \psi^y)$ . In Equation 4.29, each higher order term implies weak effects by frequency dispersion( $\mathcal{R}_D$ ), bottom stress( $\mathcal{R}_B$ ), internal motion( $\mathcal{R}_I$ ) and density variation( $\mathcal{R}_P^h$  and  $\mathcal{R}_P^v$ ).

# 4.3 Limiting Cases of Derived Model

#### 4.3.1 Linear, Inviscid Equations

Eliminating all nonlinear terms in  $\zeta$  and  $u_{\alpha}$ , assuming that  $\zeta/h$  is very small, and converting to dimensional form yields the linear system:

$$\begin{aligned} \zeta_t &+ \nabla \cdot (h\boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha}) - \nabla \cdot \left[ \left( \frac{h^3}{6} - \frac{h z_{\alpha}^2}{2} \right) \nabla S - \left( \frac{h^2}{2} + h z_{\alpha} \right) \nabla T \right] \\ &+ \nabla \cdot \left( h \overline{\boldsymbol{u}^i} \right) \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$
(4.37)

$$(\boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha})_{t} + g\nabla\zeta + \frac{1}{2}z_{\alpha}^{2}\nabla S_{t} + z_{\alpha}\nabla T_{t}$$

$$+ \overline{\boldsymbol{u}_{t}^{i}} + \nabla\left(\boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha}\cdot\overline{\boldsymbol{u}^{i}}\right)$$

$$+ \frac{\nabla\rho_{0}}{\rho_{0}}\left[\frac{1}{2g} + \left(\frac{1}{6}S_{t} - \frac{1}{2h}T_{t}\right)\right] + (\mathcal{R}_{P}^{v})_{linear}$$

$$= 0 \qquad (4.38)$$

where g is gravity and  $(\mathcal{R}_P^v)_{linear}$  is constructed in the same manner as Equation 4.34, with the only difference being the nonlinear  $u_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla u_{\alpha}$  removed from the first line and all  $\zeta$  set to zero. Both of the above equations are presented such that the standard, free-surface-only wave terms are shown in the first line, and the terms driven by the internal flow and stratification are given in the subsequent lines. In the second line of the linear momentum equation (4.38) above are the forcing terms associated with the depth-averaged internal flow, while in the third line are the two terms due to horizontal and vertical density gradients, respectively.

#### 4.3.2 First-Order Nonlinear, Inviscid Equations

Here, we include only first order nonlinear terms;  $\zeta/h$  is no longer negligible. The dimensional system becomes

$$\begin{aligned} \zeta_t &+ \nabla \cdot (H\boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha}) - \nabla \cdot \left[ \left( \frac{h^3}{6} - \frac{Hz_{\alpha}^2}{2} \right) \nabla S - \left( \frac{h^2}{2} + Hz_{\alpha} \right) \nabla T \right] \\ &+ \nabla \cdot \left( H\overline{\boldsymbol{u}^i} \right) \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$
(4.39)

$$(\boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha})_{t} + \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} + g \nabla \zeta + \frac{1}{2} z_{\alpha}^{2} \nabla S_{t} + z_{\alpha} \nabla T_{t}$$

$$- \nabla (\zeta T_{t}) + T \nabla T + \frac{1}{2} \nabla (z_{\alpha}^{2} \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla S) + \nabla (z_{\alpha} \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla T)$$

$$+ \overline{\boldsymbol{u}_{t}^{i}} + \nabla (\boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \overline{\boldsymbol{u}^{i}}) + \mathcal{R}_{P}^{v}$$

$$+ \frac{\nabla \rho_{0}}{\rho_{0}} \left\{ \frac{H}{2g} + \left[ \frac{\zeta}{3h} S_{t} + \frac{1}{6} \left( S_{t} + \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla S - S^{2} \right) - \frac{1}{2h} \left( T_{t} + \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla T - ST \right) \right] \right\}$$

$$= 0 \qquad (4.40)$$

where  $H = h + \zeta$ . Again, the standard Boussinesq-type terms are given first in the above equations. This nonlinear system will be analyzed later in this chapter to determine its analytical behavior. It is noted here that, in the absence of any vertical or horizontal density gradient, all "new" terms disappear, with the exception of the  $\overline{u^i}$  in both the continuity and momentum equations. While these terms have been discussed in this study in the framework of internal motion, the effects of any type of imposed external flow could be accommodated through  $\overline{u^{i}}$ .

# 4.4 Model Validation

In this section, the model is applied to various types of problems in which the fluid density field is configured to vary either horizontally or vertically. Calculated results from these simulations are then compared to experimental data or analytical solutions for verification. Complete details of the numerical scheme used in the following examples can be found in G. It is noted that for the remainder of the chapter, as simplified analytical and laboratory cases are examined, all terms related to viscosity (with coefficients  $\alpha$  or  $\beta$ ) are neglected.

#### 4.4.1 Horizontally Varying Fluid Density - Pneumatic Breakwater

In this section, free surface wave propagation in a fluid with a horizontal density gradient is considered. The fluid is assumed to be well-mixed vertically such that stratification effects( $\mathcal{R}_I$  and  $\mathcal{R}_P^v$ ) can be ignored. While this physical setup is a reasonable representation of a common coastal situation (e.g. wind waves near a river mouth or inside an estuary), published experimental data in this configuration is very limited. The reason for this lack of available data is likely due to the complexity of the experimental setup; a horizontal density gradient is not stable, and continuous forcing is required to maintain it. With this in mind, the model derived here will be compared with the available data such that the behavior of the model might be assessed. Data from a two-phase flow (air/water), pneumatic breakwater experiment is chosen. The bubbly area around the pneumatic breakwater is regarded as low-density fluid while the surrounding clear water maintains a constant density.

Most the studies of pneumatic breakwater focus on the surface currents generated by bottom-generated bubbly flows, which are believed to be the main drivers of wave attenuations(Taylor(1955), Lo(1991)). Nonetheless, a sudden drop of density at the bubbly zone is responsible for some wave energy blockage, in that less momentum can be transported through the lower density, bubbly fluid. In this section the present model will be applied to pneumatic breakwater simulation, in which horizontal density gradient effects in wave attenuation are evaluated.

There are a few laboratory studies on pneumatic breakwaters (e.g., Straub et al. (1959), Bulson (1963), Zhang et al. (2010)). Among these, Zhang et al. (2010) carried out a laboratory test on the performance of pneumatic breakwaters at a 1:15 model scale. Using relatively long incident waves, they measured wave height behind the pneumatic breakwater to quantify wave transmission through the bubble system. Figure 4.2 describes experimental setup of pneumatic breakwater. The wave tank has dimensions of 2m in width, 1.8m in depth and 69m in length, and the air discharge pipe is installed along the bottom. Through orifices of 0.8mm in diameter, spaced 0.01m along the pipe, air is discharged into the water to create a bubble curtain. To examine the breakwater performance as a function of different hydraulic conditions, two different wave periods and four different air fluxes are tested. Table 4.1 summarizes experimental conditions at laboratory scale.



Figure 4.2: Experimental setup of pneumatic breakwater(Zhang et al.(2010))

Table 4.1: Experiment conditions of pneumatic breakwater(Zhang et al.(2010))

Water depth	0.8 m
Wave height	0.236 m
Wave period	1.29s, 1.55s
Air amount	$10 \text{ m}^3/\text{h}, 20 \text{ m}^3/\text{h}, 30 \text{ m}^3/\text{h}, 40 \text{ m}^3/\text{h}$

For the numerical simulation, a computational domain based on the wave tank dimensions is constructed using  $\Delta x = 0.025$ m. A flexible time step,  $\Delta t$  is adopted according to CFL stability condition. During the simulation, transmitted wave height is measured behind the low density region. One remaining issue in creating numerical configuration is to conceptualize the bubbly field into an "equivalent" fluid zone of low density. To this end, some simplifying assumptions are made. For shallow flows, the lateral distribution of bubble concentration at any depth is given by a top-hat profile. Moreover, as seen in Figure 4.3 (a), bubbles are assumed to be scattered, forming a linear slope (=1/10) under the wavy condition, as indicated in Zhang et al.(2010). Slip velocity( $u_s$ ) of the



Figure 4.3: Simplified density field of bubbly fluids; (a)Depth-varying  $\rho(z)$  (b)Depth-constant  $\overline{\rho}$ 

rising bubble is given empirically by(Clift et al.(1978)),

$$u_{s} = \begin{cases} 4474 \text{m/s} \times r_{b}^{1.357} & \text{if } 0 \le r_{b} \le 0.7 \text{mm} \\ 0.23 \text{m/s} & \text{if } 0.7 \text{mm} < r_{b} \le 5.1 \text{mm} \\ 4.202 \text{m/s} \times r_{b}^{0.547} & \text{if } r_{b} > 5.1 \text{mm} \end{cases}$$
(4.41)

where  $r_b$  is bubble radius and approximately the same as orifice radius(Ma et al.(2012)). Fluid velocity( $u_w$ ) is determined by (Milgram et al.(1983)),

$$u_w = 1.5u_s \tag{4.42}$$

Air amount $(q_l)$	Slip velocity $(u_s)$	Fluid velocity $(u_w)$	$\overline{ ho}$	$\operatorname{Width}(W)$
$5 \text{ m}^3/\text{h/m}$	$0.11 \mathrm{~m/s}$	$0.67 \mathrm{~m/s}$	938.52	$0.08 \mathrm{m}$
$10 \mathrm{~m^3/h/m}$	$0.11 \mathrm{~m/s}$	$0.67 \mathrm{~m/s}$	880.77	$0.08\mathrm{m}$
$15 \mathrm{~m^3/h/m}$	$0.11 \mathrm{~m/s}$	$0.67 \mathrm{~m/s}$	826.20	$0.08 \mathrm{m}$
$20~{ m m}^3/{ m h/m}$	$0.11 \mathrm{~m/s}$	$0.67 \mathrm{~m/s}$	774.89	$0.08\mathrm{m}$

Table 4.2: Parameters for simplified density fields of bubbly area

The total rising velocity of bubbles is then  $(u_s + u_w)$ .

Guided by these assumptions, the density of the bubbly zone can be calculated as

$$\rho(z) = \left\{ 1 - \frac{q_a}{2S(h+z)(u_s+u_w)} \right\} \rho_w + \frac{q_a}{2S(h+z)(u_s+u_w)} \rho_a$$
(4.43)

in which  $\rho_a$  and  $\rho_w$  represent densities of air(= 1.269kg/m<sup>3</sup>) and water(= 1000kg/m<sup>3</sup>), respectively. *S* denotes side slope of bubbly zone and  $q_a$  represents injected air volume per unit width. For depth-integrated model use,  $\rho(z)$  is depth-averaged, as depicted in Figure 4.3 (b). Calculated quantities for density fields are listed in Table 4.2.

The computed results of the transmission coefficient  $(K_t = \text{transmitted wave height})$  divided by incident wave height) are plotted in Figure 4.4 and Figure 4.5 with measurement. As expected, the effects of the density transition can be found in both results, indicating greater air volume discharge yields less transmission through the pneumatic breakwater. Comparison between calculation and measurement shows good agreement although the numerical simulations have a clear over-prediction bias. The likely reason for this discrepancy is the numerical neglect of the bubble-induced currents. However, the model provides the proper parametric trends and dependencies, and the accuracy is reasonable.



Figure 4.4: Comparison of transmission coefficient  $(K_t)$  between measurement and calculation; T=1.55 sec

#### 4.4.2 Waves Excited by Internal Motion: Linear Surface Waves

In this section two-layer internal flow is considered, in which an internal wave travels along the interface. Being concerned with vertical stratification only, terms associated with horizontal density variation  $(\mathcal{R}_P^h)$  are neglected.

It is well-known that the presence of interfacial motion in a two-layer fluid excites free surface motion (Lamb(1932), Phillips(1977)). Lamb(1932) obtained an exact solution about the surface disturbance due to an internal wave using linear potential theory. Such



Figure 4.5: Comparison of transmission coefficient  $(K_t)$  between measurement and calculation; T=1.29 sec

disturbances at the free surface propagate along with internal waves, whose dispersive properties are locked to the internal motion.

Within the presented derivation, the profile  $u^i(z)$  has up to this point been considered arbitrary. To account for internal wave effects on the free surface modes, a reasonable description of internal wave velocity  $u^i(z)$  is needed here. First, the simplified two-layer system as shown in Figure 4.6 is presented. Density and undisturbed thickness of upper



Figure 4.6: Simplified two-layer system with interfacial wave  $^{a}$ 

layer are  $\rho_u$  and  $h_u$ , while the lower layer has  $\rho_l$  and  $h_l$ . The disturbances propagating along the surface( $\eta^s$ ) and interface( $\eta^i$ ) are defined as simply as

$$\eta^s = a^s \cos \vartheta^i \tag{4.44}$$

$$\eta^i = a^i \cos \vartheta^i \tag{4.45}$$

in which  $a^s$  and  $a^i$  represent wave amplitudes at the surface and interface, respectively, and  $\vartheta^i (= k^i x - \sigma^i t + \epsilon)$  is the phase function with arbitrary shift  $\epsilon$ . Note that,  $k^i$  and  $\sigma^i$  are assumed to follow the internal wave dispersion relation(Lamb(1932)) as below,

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>a</sup>Idea underlying the plot assumes internal-mode interfacial wave( $\eta^i$ ) generates internal-mode surface wave( $\eta^s$ ), For the definition of internal-mode, see Părău and Dias(2001)

$$\left\{\frac{\rho_u}{\rho_l} \tanh\left(k^i h_u\right) \tanh\left(k^i h_l\right) + 1\right\} \left(\sigma^i\right)^4 - gk^i \left\{\tanh\left(k^i h_u\right) + \tanh\left(k^i h_l\right)\right\} \left(\sigma^i\right)^2 + \tanh\left(k^i h_u\right) \tanh\left(k^i h_l\right) \left(1 - \frac{\rho_u}{\rho_l}\right) g^2 \left(k^i\right)^2 = 0$$
(4.46)

Following Liu(2006), who developed an analytic solution based on potential theory, the linear solution of  $u^i$  can be expressed as,

$$u^{i}(z) = \begin{cases} \left[A\cosh\left\{k^{i}(z+h_{l})\right\} + B\sinh\left\{k^{i}(z+h_{l})\right\}\right]\cos\vartheta^{i} & (\eta^{i} \leq z \leq \eta^{s}) \\ \\ C\cosh\left\{(k^{i}(z+h_{u}+h_{l})\right\}\cos\vartheta^{i} & (-h_{l} \leq z \leq \eta^{i}) \end{cases}$$
(4.47)

where A, B, C are

$$A = \frac{a^{i}}{\sigma^{i}} \left[ g\left(1 - \frac{\rho_{l}}{\rho_{u}}\right) + \frac{\rho_{l}\left(\sigma^{i}\right)^{2}}{\rho_{u}k^{i}\tanh\left(k^{i}h_{l}\right)} \right]$$
(4.48)

$$B = \frac{a^i \sigma^i}{k^i} \tag{4.49}$$

$$C = \frac{a^i \sigma^i}{k^i \sinh\left(k^i h_l\right)} \tag{4.50}$$
The depth-averaged internal velocity,  $\overline{u^i}$ , is needed by the model, and can be calculated s

$$\overline{u^{i}} = \frac{1}{h_{u} + h_{l}} \int_{-(h_{u} + h_{l})}^{\eta^{s}} u^{i}(z) dz$$
$$= \frac{\sigma^{i}}{k^{i}(h_{u} + h_{l})} \left\{ \frac{\sigma^{i}}{(\sigma^{i})^{2} \cosh\left(k^{i}h_{u}\right) - gk^{i} \sinh\left(k^{i}h_{u}\right)} \right\} a^{i} \cos\vartheta^{i} \qquad (4.51)$$

from the linear theory. Using the relationship between  $a^i$  and  $a^s$  (Lamb(1932), Liu(2006))

$$a^{s} = \frac{\sigma^{i}}{\left(\sigma^{i}\right)^{2}\cosh\left(k^{i}h_{u}\right) - gk^{i}\sinh\left(k^{i}h_{u}\right)}a^{i},\tag{4.52}$$

Equation 4.51 can be further simplified to,

$$\overline{u^i} = \frac{\sigma^i}{k^i (h_u + h_l)} \eta^s \tag{4.53}$$

As only linear internal waves are examined, any non-linear correction for large amplitude waves is neglected. With the above solution, however, it can be deduced that two-layer internal waves produce a mean instantaneous flux which excites linear surface motion. The above expression for depth-averaged internal velocity, when using in the derived model, will produce locked surface models that should reproduce the linear, dispersive solution above exactly. This can be seen using the linearized version of Equation G.1. Assuming that water depth is constant, density has no gradient in horizontal plane, and only the internal-mode free surface wave exists, whose dispersion property is locked to the internal waves, Equaton 4.53 can be exactly obtained. Also note that for other types of internal wave structures (e.g., solitary waves),  $\overline{u^i}$  can be straightforwardly obtained and applied to Equation 4.22, but will not be derived here.

Now, surface movement excitation due to internal motion will be examined with experimental and numerical data. For laboratory data, Umeyama(2002) is used here. He used a 3m-long, 0.15m-wide and 0.22m-deep wave tank equipped with an oil-pressuretype wave maker on one end and wave-absorber on the other to generate internal waves. The density profile measured in the experiment is recreated and shown in Figure 4.7, with a



Figure 4.7: Measured(solid) and approximately calculated(dashed) density profile in Umeyama(2002)

	CASE I	CASE II
Wave amplitude $(a^i)$	$0.005 \mathrm{~m}$	$0.005 \mathrm{~m}$
Wave $period(T^i)$	5.4  sec	$6.4  \sec$
Low layer thickness $(h_l)$	0.15m	0.15m
Upper layer thickness $(h_u)$	0.15m	0.15m
Pycnocline thickness( $\delta$ )	$0.006 \mathrm{m}$	$0.006 \mathrm{m}$
Low layer density $(\rho_l)$	$1050 \text{ kg/m}^3$	$1050 \text{ kg/m}^3$
Upper layer density $(\rho_u)$	$1000 \ \mathrm{kg/m^3}$	$1000 \text{ kg/m}^3$

Table 4.3: Experiment conditions of internal waves in two-layer(Umeyama(2002))

Since the pycnocline thickness is found to be extremely small  $(\delta = \delta'/h' = 0.006 \text{m}/0.30 \text{m} = 0.02)$ , the  $\mathcal{R}_P^v$  term, which is  $O(\mu^2 \delta)$  can be neglected. Table 4.3 summarizes test conditions of the experiment. It should be noted here that internal waves propagate as the internal-mode waves of of Equation 4.46. There is no external-mode wave either at surface or at the interface<sup>1</sup>.

The physical layout of the experiment is mapped to the computational domain for numerical implementation, in which  $\Delta x = 0.02$ m and  $\Delta t = 0.002$ sec have been chosen. Simulated results of the free surface elevation induced by internal waves are presented in Figure 4.8 and 4.9, including both experimental data and analytical solutions (Equation 4.52) for comparison. Expected agreement between numerical and analytical results is found. Some disagreement with measurement is seen in both in magnitude and phase of the free surface waves. Considering the small scale and measurement complexity in these laboratory tests, the calculation gives reasonable results.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>Referring to the internal/external-mode, this study follows Părău and Dias(2001)'s direction.



Figure 4.8: Measured(dashed), numerical(solid) and analytical(dot) surface elevation in CASE I

#### 4.4.3 Waves Excited by Internal Motion: Nonlinear Surface Waves

As explored in the previous section, surface waves are generated by internal waves according to the linear solutions. These waves are locked to the phase of the internal waves, and so are linearly governed by the internal wave dispersion relation. In a more general situation where the free gravity waves, such as wind waves or tsunamis, propagate on the surface, there may exist some nonlinear coupling between these two modes. Thus, in this section, the nonlinear interaction between internal- and external-mode surface waves



Figure 4.9: Measured(dashed), numerical(solid) and analytical(dot) surface elevation in CASE II

are investigated. This analysis will rely on quantifying the analytical behavior of the first-order nonlinear system, as given in Section 4.3.2.

Previous nonlinear similar analysis for Boussinesq-type equations can be found in, for example, Kennedy et al.(2001) and Lynett and Liu(2004), among numerous others. Stokes theory is a well-defined and easily-used method that can be appropriately adopted here. Following Kennedy et al.(2001), the first-order-nonlinear equation model in onehorizontal dimension, with constant depth, and weak horizontal and vertical density gradients is given as

$$\begin{pmatrix} \zeta^{[2]} \end{pmatrix}_{t} + h \left( u_{\alpha}^{[2]} \right)_{x} + h^{3} \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{z_{\alpha}}{h} \right)^{2} + \frac{z_{\alpha}}{h} + \frac{1}{3} \right\} \left( u_{\alpha}^{[2]} \right)_{xxx} = \\ - \left[ \zeta^{[1]} u_{\alpha}^{[1]} \right]_{x} - h^{2} \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{z_{\alpha}}{h} \right)^{2} + \frac{z_{\alpha}}{h} \right\} \left[ \zeta^{[1]} \left( u_{\alpha}^{[1]} \right)_{xx} \right]_{x} - \left[ \zeta^{[1]} \overline{u^{i}} \right]_{x}$$
(4.54)

$$\begin{pmatrix} u_{\alpha}^{[2]} \end{pmatrix}_{t} + g \left( \zeta^{[2]} \right)_{x} + h^{2} \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{z_{\alpha}}{h} \right)^{2} + \frac{z_{\alpha}}{h} \right\} \left( u_{\alpha}^{[2]} \right)_{xxt} = -u_{\alpha}^{[1]} \left( u_{\alpha}^{[1]} \right)_{x} + h \left[ \zeta^{[1]} \left( u_{\alpha}^{[1]} \right)_{xt} \right]_{x} - h^{2} \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{z_{\alpha}}{h} \right)^{2} + \frac{z_{\alpha}}{h} \right\} \left[ u_{\alpha}^{[1]} \left( u_{\alpha}^{[1]} \right)_{xx} \right]_{x} - \frac{1}{2} h^{2} \left[ \left( u_{\alpha}^{[1]} \right)_{x}^{2} \right]_{x} - \left( u_{\alpha}^{[1]} \overline{u^{i}} \right)_{x}$$
(4.55)

where the superscript <sup>[1]</sup> and <sup>[2]</sup> represent first and second order solutions in the Stokes system, respectively. Suppose that there are internal- and external-mode surface waves expressed as,

$$\zeta^{[1]} = \zeta^e + \zeta^i = a^e \cos \vartheta^e + a^i \cos \vartheta^i \tag{4.56}$$

$$u_{\alpha}^{[1]} = b^e \cos \vartheta^e \tag{4.57}$$

$$\overline{u^i} = b^i \cos \vartheta^i \tag{4.58}$$

where superscripts i and e imply internal- and external-mode components, respectively. Again, the internal-mode surface wave has been generated by internal interfacial waves while the external-mode surface wave is assumed a free gravity wave on the air-fluid surface. The amplitude of free surface displacement and velocity are symbolized by a and b.

Second-order solutions are then assumed as,

$$\zeta^{[2]} = a^{ee} \cos\left(2\vartheta^e\right) + a^{ii} \cos\left(2\vartheta^i\right) + a^+ \cos\left(\vartheta^e + \vartheta^i\right) + a^- \cos\left(\vartheta^e - \vartheta^i\right) \tag{4.59}$$

$$u_{\alpha}^{[2]} = b^{ee} \cos\left(2\vartheta^{e}\right) + b^{ii} \cos\left(2\vartheta^{i}\right) + b^{+} \cos\left(\vartheta^{e} + \vartheta^{i}\right) + b^{-} \cos\left(\vartheta^{e} - \vartheta^{i}\right)$$
(4.60)

in which superscripts  $i^{i}$  and  $e^{e}$  are for self-interactions, whereas + and - are for the superand sub-harmonic components, respectively. The phase function is  $\vartheta^{(i,e)} = k^{(i,e)}x - \sigma^{(i,e)}t + \epsilon^{(i,e)}$ . Substituting first and second order solutions into Equation 4.54 and 4.55, and collecting super- and sub-harmonic terms,  $a^{\pm}$  can be obtained as,

$$a^{\pm} = \frac{M_{22}^{\pm}L_1^{\pm} - M_{12}^{\pm}L_2^{\pm}}{M_{11}^{\pm}M_{22}^{\pm} - M_{12}^{\pm}M_{21}^{\pm}}$$
(4.61)

where

$$M_{11}^{\pm} = \sigma^e \pm \sigma^i \tag{4.62}$$

$$M_{12}^{\pm} = -(k^e \pm k^i)h\left[1 - \left\{\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{z_{\alpha}}{h}\right)^2 + \frac{z_{\alpha}}{h} + \frac{1}{3}\right\}\right](k^e \pm k^i)^2h^2$$
(4.63)

$$M_{21}^{\pm} = -g(k^e \pm k^i) \tag{4.64}$$

$$M_{22}^{\pm} = \left(\sigma^e \pm \sigma^i\right) \left[1 - \left\{\frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{z_\alpha}{h}\right)^2 + \frac{z_\alpha}{h}\right\} (k^e \pm k^i)^2 h^2\right]$$
(4.65)

$$L_{1}^{\pm} = \frac{1}{2} (k^{e} \pm k^{i}) \left[ a^{i} b^{e} + a^{e} b^{i} - \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{z_{\alpha}}{h} \right)^{2} + \frac{z_{\alpha}}{h} \right\} a^{i} b^{e} \left( k^{e} h \right)^{2} \right]$$
(4.66)

$$L_{2}^{\pm} = \frac{1}{2} (k^{e} \pm k^{i}) \left[ b^{i} b^{e} - a^{i} b^{e} k^{e} h \sigma^{e} \right]$$
(4.67)

This solution may be compared with an exact potential solution of Liu(2006), who derived second-order analytical expressions for internal and surface waves in a two-layer density-stratified fluid. By manipulating Liu's solution, the amplitude of super- and sub-harmonic waves,  $a_{exact}^{\pm}$  can be expressed (see Appendix H).

Figure 4.10 presents the comparison of super- and sub-harmonic wave amplitudes between the presented model and potential solutions when  $h_u = 0.5, h_l = 0.5$  and  $\rho_u/\rho_l = 0.9$ . The contours show model accuracy relative to potential theory; values near 1.0 are desired. As expected with the derived, long-wave-based model, accurate results are seen at small wave numbers and errors grow as wave number increases. Both

super-harmonic and sub-harmonic wave amplitudes tend to be underpredicted as wave dispersion increases. From this analysis, it is concluded that nonlinear interaction between internal- and external-mode surface waves can be predicted reasonably within the range of  $k^e h < 0.3$  and  $k^i h < 0.7$ .



Figure 4.10: Second-order super-harmonic and sub-harmonic amplitude relative to the exact solution  $(a^{\pm}/a_{exact}^{\pm})$ 

## 4.5 Summary

By allowing horizontal and vertical variation of fluid density, a depth-integrated model for long gravity waves over variable density fluid has been developed in the present chapter. To include density change effects, correction terms to represent horizontal and vertical density change are added to typical Boussinesq model of uniform density. In particular, two-layer fluid system is chosen as vertical density variations, where interfacial wave effects on free surface is additionally considered through direct inclusion of velocity component of interfacial wave. During the derivation of equation set, internal wave structure is kept as generic form within the long internal wave approximation for general use, To numerically solve derived equations, finite volume scheme coupled with approximated Riemann solver is adopted for leading order terms while cell-centered finite volume methods are used for others.

Then, numerical model is applied to various type of problems in which density field is configured to vary either horizontally or vertically. For horizontal variation of fluid density, pneumatic breakwater system is simulated to assess density drop effects and fair agreement is seen between computed and measured data, conceding that current effect by bubbly flux is responsible for wave attenuation in some degree. Interfacial wave of two-layer fluid system, as the case of vertical density variation is tested to investigate how the internal motions affects free surface. As Lamb(1932) analyzed, surface disturbance by internal wave is observed in numerical results, which is in complete agreement with analytical solution and thus provides an insight on how the internal motions within twolayer fluid system affects surface motions. Lastly, nonlinear interaction between externaland internal-mode surface waves are studied numerically and analytically, which gives reasonable range of wave numbers for practical application.

### Chapter 5

## **Conclusions and Future Works**

## 5.1 Conclusions

This dissertation studies long wave modeling using the Boussinesq-type approach, focusing on the complex physics locally-induced at the nearshore such as bottom-induced turbulence, wave-current interactions and variable-density flows. The following summarizes the major conclusions from each section of this dissertation.

In Chapter 2, a two-way coupled model for long wave simulation has been proposed for the purpose of seamlessly modeling long wave evolution from the deep ocean to the shoreline, with fine scale resolution, and without the loss of important physics in the nearshore. The two components are the shallow-water solver COMCOT and a dispersive, turbulent, and rotational Boussinesq model. A general benchmark test has been completed with various conditions provided for validity of the coupled model application. As a further validation of the coupled model, long wave propagation onto a shallow shelf has been examined and compared with laboratory data. The results demonstrate that near coastal areas, dispersive effects may be locally important. As a final test, a recent tsunami event, the 2004 Sumatra tsunami, has been simulated with a far field focus on the Port of Salalah. The coupled model has successfully simulated various sizes of eddies generated by the tsunami through turbulent activity, and these local physics are confirmed by the observations presented in Okal et al.(2006).

In Chapter 3, a set of depth-integrated equations describing combined wave-current flows are derived mathematically and discretized numerically. The Doppler shift effect, a basic property in wave-current models, is confirmed analytically by limiting the equations into a one dimensional linear set. For the formulation of velocity component in derivation, additional stresses introduced by nonlinear wave-current interaction are considered in addition to the bottom-induced stress. Using a parameter  $\boldsymbol{b}$ , an additional stress is defined to represent the intensity of turbulent interaction between waves and currents. An appropriate estimation of  $\boldsymbol{b}$  is provided through Kemp and Simons(1982, 1983)'s experiments. Long wave propagation over either depth-uniform or linearly-sheared current fields are tested for validation. Comparison of numerical calculations with measurement reveals that the rotational behavior of currents needs to be taken into account when describing the coupled wave-current velocity field. As a final attempt, the model is applied to a complex configuration, which contains both wave-wave and wave-current interaction, as well as spatial variation of background currents. Subharmonic bound long waves generated by wave-wave interaction are well recreated in the presence of background currents and the comparison with the measurements shows good agreement.

In Chapter 4, by allowing horizontal and vertical variation of fluid density, a depthintegrated model for long gravity waves over a variable density fluid has been developed. Throughout the derivation, density change effects appear as correction terms to a Boussinesq-type model of uniform density while internal wave effects on free surface waves in a two-layer fluid system are accounted for through direct inclusion of the internal wave velocity field. For general use of the model, the internal wave structure is kept arbitrary. Then, a numerical model is applied to various type of problems in which the density field is configured to vary either horizontally or vertically. A pneumatic breakwater system is tested by the model to examine horizontal density drop effects, and fair agreement is seen between calculated and measured data. A two-layer internal wave with weak density stratification is simulated to investigate how internal motions affect the free surface. Numerical results show complete agreement with an analytical solution, providing insight on how the internal motions within a two-layer fluid system affect surface motions. Lastly, nonlinear interaction between external- and internal-mode surface waves is studied numerically and analytically, which gives reasonable range of wave conditions for practical application.

#### 5.2 Future Works

The following are future research ideas to improve the accuracy and applicability of presented models. For further understanding of the mixing and transport properties of the nearshore flows, an unsteady density and current field, which should be two-way coupled with a hydrodynamic model, will be considered. With this, more practical application of the model can be expected.

Regarding the numerical technique, a non-diffusive numerical scheme is in need since numerical diffusion, as we explored in the first topic, may affect the current patterns and thus lead to numerical errors. At the same time, a more robust and accurate solver can be sought for the application of the model to more challenging problems. Fine-resolution(less than O(1m)) modeling at the large vicinity of coastal areas may be a valuable effort. To capture the local physics and to reduce numerical errors which are increasing with grid size, fine-scale simulations are regarded as necessary measures. To this end, present model will be parallelized by MPI for practical implementation. Lastly, comparison of the wave-current model with field data will be performed, for the rigorous validation of wave-current model.

### Bibliography

- Alam, M.R. (2012) A new triad resonance between co-propagating surface and interfacial waves, *Journal of Fluid Mechanics*, 691, p. 267-278
- [2] Armi, L. and Farmer, D.(1986) Maximal two-layer exchange through a contraction with barotropic net flow, *Journal of Fluid Mechanics*, 164, p. 27-51
- [3] Benjamin, T. B. (1962) The solitary wave on a stream with an arbitrary distribution of vorticity, *Journal of Fluid Mechanics*, 12, p. 97-116.
- [4] Bulson, P.S.(1963) Large scale bubble breakwater experiments, Dock and Harbour Authority, London, XII(516), p. 191-197
- [5] Chen, Q.(2006) Fully nonlinear Boussinesq-type equations for waves and currents over porous beds, *Journal of Engineering Mechanics*, 132(2), p. 220-230.
- [6] Chen, Q., Kirby, J.T., Dalrymple, R.A., Shi, F. and Thornton, E.B. (2003) Boussinesq modeling of longshore currents, *Journal of Geophysical Research*, 108(C11), p. 3362-3380.
- [7] Choi, W. (2003) Strongly nonlinear long gravity waves in uniform shear flows, *Physical Review E*, 68, p. 026305
- [8] Choi, W. (2009) Nonlinear surface waves interacting with a linear shear current, Mathematics and Computers in Simulation, 80, p. 29-36
- [9] Choi, W. and Camassa, R. (1996) Weakly nonlinear internal waves in a two-fluid system, *Journal of Fluid Mechanics*, 313, p. 83-103

- [10] Choi, W. and Camassa, R. (1999) Fully nonlinear internal waves in a two-fluid system, *Journal of Fluid Mechanics*, 384, p. 27-58
- [11] Christoffersen, J.B. and Jonsson, I.G. (1985) Bed friction and dissipation in a combined current and wave motion, *Ocean Engineering*, 12(5), p. 387-423
- [12] Clift, R., Grace, J., Weber, M. (1978) Bubbles, drops and particles, Academic Press.
- [13] Craig, W., Guyenne, P. and Sulem, C. (2011) Coupling between internal and surface waves, *Natural Hazards*, 57, p. 617-642
- [14] Davies, A.G., Soulsby, R.L. and King, H.L. (1988) A numerical model of the combined wave and current bottom boundary layer, *Journal of Geophysical Research*, 93(C1), p. 491-508
- [15] Dean, R.G. and Dalrymple, R.A. (1984) Water Wave Mechanics for Engineers and Scientists, Prentice-Hall
- [16] Dingemans, M. W., Van Kester, J. A. Th. M., Radder, A. C. and Uittenbogaard, R.
  E. (1996) The effect of the CL-vortex force in 3D wave-current interaction. In Proc. 25th Intl Conf. on Coastal Eng., Orlando, p. 4821-4832
- [17] Dong, G., Ma, X., Xu, J., Ma, Y. and Wang, G. (2009) Experimental study of the transformation of bound long waves over a mild slope with ambient currents, *Coastal Engineering*, 56, pp. 1035-1042
- [18] Donato, A.N., Peregrine, D.H. and Stocker, J.R. (1999) The focusing of surface waves by internal waves, *Journal of Fluid Mechanics*, 384, p. 27-58
- [19] Elachi, C. and Apel, J.R. (1976) Internal wave observatins made with an airborne synthetic aperture imaging radar, *Geophysical Research Letters*, 3(11), p. 647-650
- [20] Elder, J.W. (1959) The dispersion of marked fluid in turbulent shear flow, Journal of Fluid Mechanics, 5, p. 544-560

- [21] Erduran, K.S., Ilic, S., Kutija, V. (2005) Hybrid finite-volume finite-difference scheme for the solution of Boussinesq equations. *Int. J. Numer. Methods Fluids*, 49, p. 1213-1232
- [22] Evans, W.A.B. and Ford, M.J. (1996) An integral equation approach to internal (2-layer) solitary waves, *Phys. Fluids*, 8, p. 2032-2047
- [23] Farmer, D. and Armi, L. (1999) The generation and trapping of solitary waves over topography, *Science*, 283, p. 188-190
- [24] Fernando, R., Guo, J. and Lin, P. (2011) Wave-current interaction at an angle 1: experiment, *Journal of Hydraulic Research*, 49(4), p. 424-436.
- [25] Freeman, N.C. and Johnson R.S.(1970) Shallow water waves on shear flows, Journal of Fluid Mechanics, 42, p. 401-409
- [26] Fredsoe, J., Andersen, K.H. and Sumer, B.M. (1999) Wave plus current over a ripplecovered bed, *Coastal Engineering*, 38, p. 177-221
- [27] Gargett, A.E. and Hughes, B.A. (1972) On the interactin of surface and internal waves, J. Fluid Mech., 52, p. 179-191
- [28] George, D.L. and LeVeque, R. J.,(2006) Finite volume methods and adaptive refinement for global tsunami propagation and local inundation, *Science of Tsunami Hazards*, vol.24, p. 319-328
- [29] Gobbi, M. F. and Kirby, J. T., (1999) Wave evolution over submerged sills: Tests of a high-order Boussinesq model, *Coastal Engineering*, 37, p. 57-96
- [30] Grant, W.D. and Madsen, O.S. (1979) Combined wave and current interaction with a rough bottom, *Journal of Geophysical Research*, 84(C4), p. 1797-1808
- [31] Grilli, S. T., Ioualalen, M., Asavanant, J., Shi, F., Kirby, J.,and Watts, P.(2007) Source constraints and model simulation of the December 26, 2004 Indian Ocean

tsunami, Journal of Waterway, Port, Coastal and Ocean Engineering, 133(6), p. 414-428

- [32] Groeneweg, J. and Klopman, G. (1998) Changes in the mean velocity profiles in the combined wave-current motion described in GLM formulation, *Journal of Fluid Mechanics*, 370, p. 271-296
- [33] Harig, S., Chaeroni, Pranowo, W. S. and Behrens, J. (2008) Tsunami simulations on several scales: comparison of approaches with unstructured meshes and nested grids. *Ocean Dynamics*, 58, p. 429-440
- [34] Helfrich, K. and Melville, W. (2006) Long nonlinear internal waves, Annu. Rev. Fluid Mech., 38, p. 395-425
- [35] Hill, D.F. and Foda, M.A. (1998) Subharmonic resonance of oblique interfacial waves by a progressive surface waves, Proc. R. Soc. Lond. A, 454, p. 1129-1144
- [36] Hinterberger, C., Frohlich, J. and Rodi, W. (2007) Three-dimensional and depthaveraged large-eddy simulations of some shallow water flows, *Journal of Hydraulic Engineering*, 133(8), p. 857-872
- [37] Huang, Z. and Mei, C.C. (2003) Effects of surface waves on a turbulent current over a smooth or rough seabed, *Journal of Fluid Mechanics*, 497, p. 253-287
- [38] Huang, Z. and Mei, C.C. (2006) Wave-induced longitudinal vortices in a shallow current, *Journal of Fluid Mechanics*, 551, p. 323-356
- [39] Johnson, R.S. (2003) The Camassa-Holm equation for water waves moving over a shear flow, *Fluid Dynamics Research*, 33, p. 97-111
- [40] Jonsson, I.G., Brink-Kjer, O. and Thomas, G.P. (1978) Wave action and set-down for waves on a shear current, *Journal of Fluid Mechanics*, 87(3), p. 401-416
- [41] Joyce, T.M. (1974) Nonlinear interactions among standing surface and internal gravity waves, J. Fluid Mech., 63, p. 801-825

- [42] Kanarsk, Y. and Maderich, V. (2003) A non-hydrostatic numerical moel for calculation free-surface stratified flows, *Ocean Dynamics*, 53, p. 176-185
- [43] Kao, T., Pan, F.-S. and Renouard, D. (1985) Internal solitons on the pycnocline: generation, propagation, and shoaling and breaking over a slope, J. Fluid Mech., 159, p. 19-53
- [44] Kemp, P. H. and Simons, R. R. (1982) The interaction of waves and a turbulent current: waves propagating with the current, *Journal of Fluid Mechanics*, 116, p. 227-250
- [45] Kemp, P. H. and Simons, R. R. (1983) The interaction of waves and a turbulent current: waves propagating against the current, *Journal of Fluid Mechanics*, 130, p. 73-89
- [46] Kennedy, A.B., Kirby, J.T., Chen, Q. and Dalrymple, R.A. (2001) Boussinesq-type equations with improved nonlinear performance, *Wave Motion*, 33, p. 225-243
- [47] Kim, D.-H., Lynett, P., and Socolofsky, S. (2009) A Depth-Integrated Model for Weakly Dispersive, Turbulent, and Rotational Fluid Flows, *Ocean Modelling*, 27(3-4), p. 198-214
- [48] Kim, H., O'Connor, B.A., Park, I., Lee, Y. (2001) Modeling effect of intersection angle on near-bed flows for waves and currents, *Journal of Waterway, Port, Coastal* and Ocean Engineering, 127, p. 308-318
- [49] Koop, C.G. and Butler, G. (1981) An investigation of internal solitary waves in a two-fluid system, J. Fluid Mech., 112, p. 225-251
- [50] Kowalik, Z., Knight, W., Logan, T., Whitmore, P., (2005) Numerical modeling of the global tsunami: Indonesian tsunami of 26 December 2004, *Science of Tsunami Hazards*, 23(1) p. 40-56

- [51] Lacor, C.A., Smirnov, S.A., Baelmans, M. (2004) A finite volume formulation of compact central schemes on arbitrary structured grids, *Journal of Computational Physics*, 198, p. 535-566
- [52] Lamb, H. (1932) Hydrodynamics, Cambridge Univ. Press, New York
- [53] Leighton, F., Borthwick, A., and Taylor, P. (2010) 1-D numerical modelling of shallow flows with variable horizontal density, Int. J. Numer. Meth. Fluids, 62, p. 1209-1231
- [54] Lewis, J.E., Lake, B.M. and Ko, D.R.S.(1974) On the interaction of internal waves and surface gravity waves, J. Fluid Mech., 64, p. 773-800
- [55] Lin, P. (2008) Numerical Modeling of Water Waves, Taylor & Francis Group
- [56] Liu, C.-M. (2006) Second-order random internal and surface waves in a two-fluid system, *Geophy. Res. Letter*, 33, L06610
- [57] Liu, P. L.-F., Woo, S.B., Cho, Y.S. (1998) Computer Programs for Tsunami Propagation and Inundation, *Technical Report*, Cornell University
- [58] Liu, P.L.-F. and Wang, X. (2012) A multi-layer model for nonlinear internal wave propagation in shallow water, J. Fluid Mech., 695, p. 341-365
- [59] Lo, J.-M. (1991) Air bubble barrier effect on neutrally buoyant objects, J. Hydraulic Res., 29(4), p. 437-455
- [60] Longuet-Higgins, M.S. and Stewart, R.W. (1960) Changes in the form of short gravity waves on long waves and tidal currents, J. Fluid Mech., 8, p. 565-583
- [61] Longuet-Higgins, M.S. and Stewart, R.W., (1962) Radiation stress and mass transport in gravity waves, with applications to 'surf beats', *Journal of Fluid Mechanics*, 13, p. 481-504
- [62] Lowe, R.J., Rottman, J.W. and Linden, P.F. (2005) The non-Boussinesq lockexchange problem. Part 1. Theory and experiments, J. Fluid Mech., 537, p. 101-124

- [63] Lynett, P. (2006) Nearshore wave modeling with high-order Boussinesq-type equations, Journal of Waterway, Port, Coastal and Ocean Engineering, 132(5) p. 348-357
- [64] Lynett, P., Borrero, J., Liu, P. L.-F., and Synolakis, C.E. (2003) Field Survey and Numerical Simulations: A Review of the 1998 Papua New Guinea Tsunami, *Pure and Applied Geophysics*, v.160, p. 2119-2146
- [65] Lynett, P. and Liu, P. L.-F. (2002a) A Numerical Study of Submarine Landslide Generated Waves and Runup, Proc. Royal Society of London A., 458, p. 2885-2910
- [66] Lynett, P. and Liu, P. L.-F. (2002b) A two-dimensional, depth-integrated model for internal wave propagation, *Wave Motion*, 36, p. 221-240
- [67] Lynett, P. and Liu, P. L.-F. (2004) A two-layer approach to wave modelling, Proc. R. Soc. Lond. A, 460, p. 2637-2669
- [68] Ma, G., Shi, F. and Kirby, J. T. (2011) A polydisperse two-fluid model for surf zone bubble simulation, J. Geophys. Res., 116, C05010
- [69] Ma, Y.-C. (1982) Effect of long waves on the evolution of deep-water surface gravity waves, *Phys. Fluids*, 25(3), p. 411-419
- [70] Madsen, O.S. and Mei, C.C. (1969) The transformation of a solitary wave over an uneven bottom, *Journal of Fluid Mechanics*, 39, p. 781-791
- [71] Matsuyama, M., Ikeno, M., Sakakiyama, T. and Takeda, T. (2007) A study of tsunami wave fission in an undistorted experiment, *Pure and Applied Geophysics*, 164, p. 617-631
- [72] Mellor, G.L. (1991) An equation of state for numerical models of oceans and estuaries,
   J. Atm. Ocean. Tech., 8, p. 609-611
- [73] Milgram, J. H. (1983) Mean flow in round bubble plumes. J. Fluid Mech., 133, p. 345-376

- [74] Nguyen, H.Y. and Dias, F. (2008) A Boussinesq system for two-way propagation of interfacial waves, *Physica D*, 237, p. 2365-238
- [75] Nwogu, O.G. (2009) Interaction of finite-amplitude waves with vertically sheared current fields, *Journal of Fluid Mechanics*, 627, p. 179-213
- [76] Okada, Y. (1985) Surface deformation to shear and tensile faults in a half-space, Bull. Seismol. Soc. Am., 75, p. 1135-1154
- [77] Okal, E.A., Fritz, H.M., Raad, P.E., Synolakis, C.E., Al-Shijbi, Y. and Al-Saifi, M.,
   (2006) Oman Field Survey after the December 2004 Indian Ocean Tsunami, *Earthquake Spectra*, 22, S203-S218
- [78] Olabarieta, M., Medina, R. and Castanedo, M. (2010) Effects of wave-current interaction on the current profile, *Coastal Engineering*, 57, p. 643-655
- [79] Phillips, O. M. (1977) Dynamics of the Upper Ocean, second ed., Cambridge Univ. Press, New York
- [80] Press, W.H., Teukolsky, S.A., Vetterling, W.T. and Flannery, B.P. (1992) Numerical Recipes in Fortran, Cambridge University Press
- [81] Părău, E. and Dias, F. (2001) Interfacial periodic waves of permanent form with free-surface boundary conditions, J. Fluid Mech., 437, p. 325-336
- [82] Saito, T. and Furumura, T., (2009) Three-dimensional simulation of tsunami generation and propagation: application to Intraplate events, *Journal of Geophysical Re*search, 114, B02307
- [83] Schäffer, H.A. (1996) Second-order wavemaker theory for irregular waves, Ocean Eng., 23(1), p. 47-88
- [84] Segur, H. and Hammack, J.L. (1982) Soliton models of long internal waves, J. Fluid Mech., 118, p. 285-305

- [85] Selezov, I.T., Avrameko, O.V., Gurtovyi, Y.V. and Naradovyi, V.V. (2010) Nonlinear interaction of internal and surface gravity waves in a two-layer fluid with free surface, *J. Math. Sci.*, 168(4), p. 590-602
- [86] Sharma, J.N. and Dean, R.G. (1981) Second-order directional seas and associated wave forces, Soc. Pet. Eng. J., 4, p. 129-140.
- [87] Shi, F., Kirby, J. T., Harris, J. C., Geiman, J. D. and Grilli, S. T., (2012) A highorder adaptive time-stepping TVD solver for Boussinesq modeling of breaking waves and coastal inundation, *Ocean Modelling*, 43-44, p. 36-51
- [88] Son, S. and Lynett, P. (2012) Interaction of shallow water waves with weakly sheared currents of arbitrary profile, (in preparation)
- [89] Straub, L.G., Bowers, C.E. and Tarapore, Z.S. (1959) Experimental studies of pneumatic and hydraulic breakwaters, *Technical Paper*, No. 25, Series B, St. Anthony Falls Hyd. Lab. University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, USA
- [90] Swan, C., Cummins, I.P. and James, R.L. (2001) An experimental study of twodimensional surface water waves propagating on depth-varying currents. Part 1. Regular waves, *Journal of Fluid Mechanics*, 428, p. 273-304
- [91] Swan, C. and James, R.L. (2001) A simple analytical model for surface water waves on a depth-varying current, *Applied Ocean Research*, 22, p. 331-347
- [92] Swan, C. (1990) An experimental study of waves on a strongly sheared current profile.
   In Proc. 22nd Conf. on Coastal Engng., Delft, The Netherlands, p. 489-502
- [93] Shapiro, R. (1970) Smoothing, filtering, and boundary effects, Reviews of Geophysics and Space Physics, 8(2), p. 359-387
- [94] Shen, C. Y. (2001) Constituent Boussinesq equations for waves and currents, Journal of Physical Oceanography, 31, p.850-859

- [95] Smith, J.A. (2006) Observed variability of ocean wave Stokes drift, and the Eulerian response to passing groups, *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 36, p. 1381-1402
- [96] Taylor, Sir Geoffrey (1955) The action of a surface current used as a breakwater, Proc. Roy. Soc. Lond. A, 231, p. 446-478
- [97] Titov, V.V., and Synolakis, C.E. (1998) Numerical modeling of tidal wave runup, Journal of Waterway, Port, Coastal and Ocean Engineering, 124(4), p. 157-171
- [98] Thomas, G.P. (1981) Wave-current interactions: an experimental and numerical study. Part 1. Linear waves, *Journal of Fluid Mechanics*, 110, p. 457-474
- [99] Thomas, G.P. (1990) Wave-current interactions: an experimental and numerical study. Part 2. Nonlinear waves, *Journal of Fluid Mechanics*, 216, p. 505-536
- [100] Tonelli, M. and Petti, M. (2009) Hybrid finite volume-finite difference scheme for 2DH improved Boussinesq equations. *Coastal Eng.*, 56, p. 609-620
- [101] Toro, E. F. (2002) Shock-capturing methods for free-surface shallow flows, Wiley, Chichester, UK
- [102] Umeyama, M. (2002) Experimental and theoretical analyses of internal waves of finite amplitude, J. Waterway, Port, Coastal and Ocean Eng., 128(3), p. 133-141
- [103] Umeyama, M. (2005) Reynolds stresses and velocity distributions in a wave-current coexisting environment, Journal of Waterway, Port, Coastal and Ocean Engineering, 131(5), p. 203-212
- [104] Vinokur, M. (1974) Conservation equations of gas dynamics in curvilinear coordinate systems, *Journal of Computational Physics*, 14(2), p. 105-125
- [105] Wang, X., Liu, P. L.-F. (2006) An analysis of 2004 Sumatra earthquake fault plane mechanisms and Indian Ocean tsunami, *Journal of Hydraulic Research*, 44(2), p. 147-154

- [106] Wei, G., Kirby, J. T. (1995) A time-dependent numerical code for extended Boussinesq equations, Journal of Waterway, Port, Coastal and Ocean Engineering, 121, p. 251-261
- [107] Wei, G., Kirby, J. T., Grilli, S. T. and Subramanya, R. (1995) A fully nonlinear Boussinesq model for surface waves. I. Highly nonlinear unsteady waves. J. Fluid Mech., 294, p. 71-92
- [108] Wood, I.R. (1970) A lock exchange flow, J. Fluid Mech., 42, p. 671-687
- [109] Yamamoto, S. and Daiguji, H. (1993) Higher-order-accurate upwind schemes for solving the compressible Euler and Navier-Stokes equations, *Comput. Fluids*, 22, p. 259-270
- [110] Yang, S.Q., Tan, S.K., Lim, S.Y. and Zhang, S.F. (2006) Velocity distribution in combined wave-current flows, Advances in Water Resources, 29(8), p. 1196-1208
- [111] Yao, A. and Wu, C.H.(2005) Incipient breaking of unsteady waves on sheared currents. *Physics of Fluids*, 17, p. 082104
- [112] Yoon, S.B., (2002) Propagation of distant tsunamis over slowly varying topography. Journal of Geophysical Research, 107(C10), 3140
- [113] You, Z. (1996) The effect of wave-induced stress on current profiles, Ocean Engineering, 23(7), p. 619-628
- [114] Zhang, C.-X., Wang, Y.-X., Wang, G.-Y. and Yu, L.-M. et al. (2010) Wave dissipating performance of air bubble breakwaters with different layouts, J. Hydrodynamics, 22(5), p. 671-680
- [115] Zhou, J.G., Causon, D.M., Mingham, C.G. and Ingram, D.M. (2001) The surface gradient method for the treatment of source terms in the shallow water equations, *Journal of Computational Physics*, 168(2), p. 1-25

## Appendix A

## Numerical Scheme of COMCOT

The numerical solution scheme employed by COMCOT is the explicit leap-frog difference method. Nonlinear terms in the model are approximated with upwind finite differences. The final forms for the continuity and momentum equations are described below:

$$\zeta_{i,j}^{n+1/2} = \zeta_{i,j}^{n-1/2} - \frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x} \left( M_{i+1/2,j}^n - M_{i-1/2,j}^n \right) - \frac{\Delta t}{\Delta y} \left( N_{i,j+1/2}^n - N_{i,j-1/2}^n \right)$$
(A.1)

$$M_{i+1/2,j}^{n+1} = \frac{1}{1+\nu_x\Delta t} \left[ (1-\nu_x\Delta t) M_{i+1/2,j}^n - g\frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x} H_{i+1/2,j}^{n+1/2} \left(\zeta_{i+1,j}^{n+1/2} - \zeta_{i,j}^{n+1/2}\right) \right] \\ -\frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x \left(1+\nu_x\Delta t\right)} \left[ \lambda_{11} \frac{\left(M_{i+3/2,j}^n\right)^2}{H_{i+3/2,j}^n} + \lambda_{12} \frac{\left(M_{i+1/2,j}^n\right)^2}{H_{i+1/2,j}^n} + \lambda_{13} \frac{\left(M_{i-1/2,j}^n\right)^2}{H_{i-1/2,j}^n} \right]$$
(A.2)  
$$-\frac{\Delta t}{\Delta y \left(1+\nu_x\Delta t\right)} \left[ \lambda_{21} \frac{\left(MN\right)_{i+1/2,j+1}^n}{H_{i+1/2,j+1}^n} + \lambda_{22} \frac{\left(MN\right)_{i+1/2,j}^n}{H_{i+1/2,j}^n} + \lambda_{23} \frac{\left(MN\right)_{i+1/2,j-1}^n}{H_{i+1/2,j-1}^n} \right]$$

$$N_{i,j+1/2}^{n+1} = \frac{1}{1+\nu_y\Delta t} \left[ (1-\nu_y\Delta t) N_{i,j+1/2}^n - g\frac{\Delta t}{\Delta y} H_{i,j+1/2}^{n+1/2} \left(\zeta_{i,j+1}^{n+1/2} - \zeta_{i,j}^{n+1/2}\right) \right] -\frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x \left(1+\nu_y\Delta t\right)} \left[ \lambda_{31} \frac{(MN)_{i+1,j+1/2}^n}{H_{i+1,j+1/2}^n} + \lambda_{32} \frac{(MN)_{i,j+1/2}^n}{H_{i,j+1/2}^n} + \lambda_{33} \frac{(MN)_{i-1,j+1/2}^n}{H_{i-1,j+1/2}^n} \right] -\frac{\Delta t}{\Delta y \left(1+\nu_y\Delta t\right)} \left[ \lambda_{41} \frac{\left(N_{i,j+3/2}^n\right)^2}{H_{i,j+3/2}^n} + \lambda_{42} \frac{\left(N_{i,j+1/2}^n\right)^2}{H_{i,j+1/2}^n} + \lambda_{43} \frac{\left(N_{i,j-1/2}^n\right)^2}{H_{i,j-1/2}^n} \right]$$
(A.3)

where the coefficients of the upwind scheme are obtained by

$$\begin{bmatrix} \lambda_{11} = 0, & \lambda_{12} = 1, & \lambda_{13} = -1, & \text{if } M_{i+1/2,j}^n \ge 0\\ \lambda_{11} = 1, & \lambda_{12} = -1, & \lambda_{13} = 0, & \text{if } M_{i+1/2,j}^n < 0 \end{bmatrix}$$
$$\begin{bmatrix} \lambda_{21} = 0, & \lambda_{22} = 1, & \lambda_{23} = -1, & \text{if } N_{i+1/2,j}^n \ge 0\\ \lambda_{21} = 1, & \lambda_{22} = -1, & \lambda_{23} = 0, & \text{if } N_{i+1/2,j}^n < 0 \end{bmatrix}$$
$$\begin{bmatrix} \lambda_{31} = 0, & \lambda_{32} = 1, & \lambda_{33} = -1, & \text{if } M_{i,j+1/2}^n \ge 0\\ \lambda_{31} = 1, & \lambda_{32} = -1, & \lambda_{33} = 0, & \text{if } M_{i,j+1/2}^n < 0 \end{bmatrix}$$
$$\begin{bmatrix} \lambda_{41} = 0, & \lambda_{42} = 1, & \lambda_{43} = -1, & \text{if } N_{i,j+1/2}^n \ge 0\\ \lambda_{41} = 1, & \lambda_{42} = -1, & \lambda_{43} = 0, & \text{if } N_{i,j+1/2}^n \ge 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Bottom friction terms are given as

$$\nu_x = \frac{1}{2} \frac{gm^2}{\left(H_{i+1/2,j}^n\right)^{7/3}} \left[ \left(M_{i+1/2,j}^n\right)^2 + \left(N_{i+1/2,j}^n\right)^2 \right]^{1/2}$$
(A.4)

$$\nu_y = \frac{1}{2} \frac{gm^2}{\left(H_{i,j+1/2}^n\right)^{7/3}} \left[ \left(M_{i,j+1/2}^n\right)^2 + \left(N_{i,j+1/2}^n\right)^2 \right]^{1/2}$$
(A.5)

# Appendix B

# Second order terms in Boussinesq Equation

$$D_{c} = -\nabla \cdot \left[ \left(\zeta + h\right) \left\{ \left( \frac{\left(\zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2}\right)}{6} - \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2}}{2} \right) \nabla S + \left( \frac{\left(\zeta - h\right)}{2} - z_{\alpha} \right) \nabla T \right\} \right] + \nabla \cdot \left[ \psi \left(\zeta + h\right) \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2}}{2} - z_{\alpha}\zeta + \frac{\left(2\zeta^{2} - 2\zeta h - h^{2}\right)}{6} \right\} \right]$$
(B.1)

$$(D_m^x, D_m^y) = \boldsymbol{D} + \boldsymbol{D}^{\nu} + \overline{\boldsymbol{\xi}} + \overline{\boldsymbol{\xi}^{\nu}} - \nabla \cdot \left(\nu_t^h \nabla \boldsymbol{U}_{\alpha}\right) + \nu_t^v \nabla S + \frac{\boldsymbol{\tau}_b}{\rho H}$$
(B.2)

$$\begin{split} \boldsymbol{D} &= \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( \boldsymbol{z}_{\alpha}^{2} \boldsymbol{U}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla \boldsymbol{S} \right) + \nabla \left( \boldsymbol{z}_{\alpha} \boldsymbol{U}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla \boldsymbol{T} \right) + \left( \boldsymbol{T} \nabla \boldsymbol{T} \right) \\ &- \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( \boldsymbol{\zeta}^{2} \frac{\partial \boldsymbol{S}}{\partial t} \right) - \nabla \left( \boldsymbol{\zeta} \frac{\partial \boldsymbol{T}}{\partial t} \right) + \left( \frac{1}{2} \boldsymbol{z}_{\alpha}^{2} \frac{\partial \nabla \boldsymbol{S}}{\partial t} + \boldsymbol{z}_{\alpha} \frac{\partial \nabla \boldsymbol{T}}{\partial t} \right) \\ &- \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( \boldsymbol{\zeta}^{2} \boldsymbol{U}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla \boldsymbol{S} \right) - \nabla \left( \boldsymbol{\zeta} \boldsymbol{U}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla \boldsymbol{T} \right) + \nabla \left( \frac{1}{2} \boldsymbol{\zeta}^{2} \boldsymbol{S}^{2} \right) + \nabla \left( \boldsymbol{\zeta} \boldsymbol{T} \boldsymbol{S} \right) \end{split}$$
(B.3)

$$\boldsymbol{D}^{\nu} = \frac{(\zeta - h)}{2} \frac{\partial \psi \zeta}{\partial t} - \frac{(\zeta^2 - \zeta h + h^2)}{6} \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \left\{ \psi \left( \frac{z_{\alpha}^2}{2} - \zeta z_{\alpha} \right) \right\} + \frac{(\zeta - h)}{2} \nabla \left\{ \boldsymbol{U}_{\alpha} \cdot (\psi \zeta) \right\} - \frac{(\zeta^2 - \zeta h + h^2)}{6} \nabla \left( \boldsymbol{U}_{\alpha} \cdot \psi \right) + \nabla \left[ \boldsymbol{U}_{\alpha} \cdot \left\{ \psi \left( \frac{z_{\alpha}^2}{2} - \zeta z_{\alpha} \right) \right\} \right] - \psi \left\{ \frac{(\zeta^2 + \zeta h - 2h^2) S}{6} + \frac{(\zeta + h) T}{2} \right\}$$
(B.4)

where  $\nabla = (\partial/\partial x, \partial/\partial y), S = \nabla \cdot U_{\alpha}, T = \nabla \cdot (h U_{\alpha})$  and  $\psi = \tau_b / \{\rho \nu_t^v (\zeta + h)\}$ . Also  $\overline{\boldsymbol{\xi}} = (\overline{\xi^x}, \overline{\xi^y})$  and  $\overline{\boldsymbol{\xi}^{\nu}} = (\overline{\xi^{\nu^x}}, \overline{\xi^{\nu^y}})$  are given by

$$\overline{\xi^{x}} = -V_{\alpha} \left\{ \frac{\partial z_{\alpha}}{\partial x} \left( z_{\alpha} \frac{\partial S}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial T}{\partial y} \right) - \frac{\partial z_{\alpha}}{\partial y} \left( z_{\alpha} \frac{\partial S}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial T}{\partial x} \right) \right\}$$

$$- \left( \frac{\partial V_{\alpha}}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial U_{\alpha}}{\partial y} \right) \left[ \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2}}{2} - \frac{\left(\zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2}\right)}{6} \right\} \frac{\partial S}{\partial y} + \left\{ z_{\alpha} - \frac{\left(\zeta - h\right)}{2} \right\} \frac{\partial T}{\partial y} \right]$$
(B.5)

$$\overline{\xi^{y}} = U_{\alpha} \left\{ \frac{\partial z_{\alpha}}{\partial x} \left( z_{\alpha} \frac{\partial S}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial T}{\partial y} \right) - \frac{\partial z_{\alpha}}{\partial y} \left( z_{\alpha} \frac{\partial S}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial T}{\partial x} \right) \right\}$$

$$+ \left( \frac{\partial V_{\alpha}}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial U_{\alpha}}{\partial y} \right) \left[ \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2}}{2} - \frac{\left(\zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2}\right)}{6} \right\} \frac{\partial S}{\partial x} + \left\{ z_{\alpha} - \frac{\left(\zeta - h\right)}{2} \right\} \frac{\partial T}{\partial x} \right]$$
(B.6)

$$\overline{\xi^{\nu^{x}}} = -V_{\alpha} \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left\{ \psi^{y} \left( \frac{1}{2} z_{\alpha}^{2} - z_{\alpha} \zeta \right) \right\} - \frac{\left( \zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2} \right)}{6} \frac{\partial \psi^{y}}{\partial x} + \frac{\left( \zeta - h \right)}{2} \frac{\partial \psi^{y} \zeta}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left\{ \psi^{x} \left( \frac{1}{2} z_{\alpha}^{2} - z_{\alpha} \zeta \right) \right\} + \frac{\left( \zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2} \right)}{6} \frac{\partial \psi^{x}}{\partial y} - \frac{\left( \zeta - h \right)}{2} \frac{\partial \psi^{x} \zeta}{\partial y} \right] - \left( \frac{\partial V_{\alpha}}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial U_{\alpha}}{\partial y} \right) \psi^{y} \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2}}{2} - z_{\alpha} \zeta + \frac{\left( 2\zeta^{2} - 2\zeta h - h^{2} \right)}{6} \right\}$$
(B.7)

$$\overline{\xi^{\nu^{y}}} = U_{\alpha} \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left\{ \psi^{y} \left( \frac{1}{2} z_{\alpha}^{2} - z_{\alpha} \zeta \right) \right\} - \frac{\left( \zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2} \right)}{6} \frac{\partial \psi^{y}}{\partial x} + \frac{\left( \zeta - h \right)}{2} \frac{\partial \psi^{y} \zeta}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left\{ \psi^{x} \left( \frac{1}{2} z_{\alpha}^{2} - z_{\alpha} \zeta \right) \right\} + \frac{\left( \zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2} \right)}{6} \frac{\partial \psi^{x}}{\partial y} - \frac{\left( \zeta - h \right)}{2} \frac{\partial \psi^{x} \zeta}{\partial y} \right] + \left( \frac{\partial V_{\alpha}}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial U_{\alpha}}{\partial y} \right) \psi^{x} \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2}}{2} - z_{\alpha} \zeta + \frac{\left( 2\zeta^{2} - 2\zeta h - h^{2} \right)}{6} \right\}$$
(B.8)

and  $(\psi^x, \psi^y) = \psi$ .

# Appendix C

## Variables in Numerical Scheme of Boussinesq Model

$$E = E_{LO} + E_D + E_V \tag{C.1}$$

$$F = F_{LO} + F_D + U_\alpha (E_D + E_V) \tag{C.2}$$

$$G = G_{LO} + G_D + V_\alpha (E_D + E_V) \tag{C.3}$$

 $E_{LO}, F_{LO}, \text{ and } G_{LO}$  are rewritten by

$$E_{LO} = -\frac{\partial H U_{\alpha}}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial H V_{\alpha}}{\partial y} \tag{C.4}$$

$$F_{LO} = -\frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( HU_{\alpha}^2 + \frac{1}{2}gH^2 \right) - \frac{\partial HU_{\alpha}V_{\alpha}}{\partial y} + gH\frac{\partial h}{\partial x}$$
(C.5)

$$G_{LO} = -\frac{\partial H U_{\alpha} V_{\alpha}}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left( H V_{\alpha}^2 + \frac{1}{2} g H^2 \right) + g H \frac{\partial h}{\partial y}$$
(C.6)

and  $E_D$ ,  $E_V$ ,  $F_D$ ,  $G_D$ ,  $F_1$  and  $G_1$  are defined as

$$E_D = \left[ H\left\{ \left( \frac{1}{6} \left( \zeta^2 - \zeta h + h^2 \right) - \frac{1}{2} z_\alpha^2 \right) \nabla S + \left( \frac{1}{2} \left( \zeta - h \right) - z_\alpha \right) \nabla T \right\} \right]_x + \left[ H\left\{ \left( \frac{1}{6} \left( \zeta^2 - \zeta h + h^2 \right) - \frac{1}{2} z_\alpha^2 \right) \nabla S + \left( \frac{1}{2} \left( \zeta - h \right) - z_\alpha \right) \nabla T \right\} \right]_y \quad (C.7)$$

$$E_{V} = - \left[ H\psi^{x} \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2}}{2} - z_{\alpha}\zeta + \frac{(2\zeta^{2} - 2\zeta h - h^{2})}{6} \right\} \right]_{x} - \left[ H\psi^{y} \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2}}{2} - z_{\alpha}\zeta + \frac{(2\zeta^{2} - 2\zeta h - h^{2})}{6} \right\} \right]_{y}$$
(C.8)

$$(F_{D}, G_{D}) = H \left[ \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( \zeta^{2} \mathbf{U}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla S \right) + \nabla \left( \zeta \mathbf{U}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla T \right) - \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( \zeta^{2} S^{2} \right) \right] - \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} \mathbf{U}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla S \right) - \nabla \left( z_{\alpha} \mathbf{U}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla T \right) - \left( T \nabla T \right) - \nabla \left( \zeta T S \right) \right] - \frac{\left( \zeta - h \right)}{2} \nabla \left\{ \mathbf{U}_{\alpha} \cdot \left( \psi \zeta \right) \right\} + \frac{\left( \zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2} \right)}{6} \nabla \left( \mathbf{U}_{\alpha} \cdot \psi \right) \right] - \nabla \left[ \mathbf{U}_{\alpha} \cdot \left\{ \psi \left( \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2}}{2} - \zeta z_{\alpha} \right) \right\} \right] + \psi \left\{ \frac{\left( \zeta^{2} + \zeta h - 2h^{2} \right) S}{6} + \frac{HT}{2} \right\} - \overline{\xi} - \overline{\xi}^{\nu} \right] + \nabla \cdot \left( \nu_{t}^{h} \nabla \mathbf{U}_{\alpha} \right) - \nu_{t}^{v} \nabla S - \frac{\tau_{b}}{\rho H} \right]$$
(C.9)

$$F_1 = \frac{H}{2} \left( \zeta^2 - z_\alpha^2 \right) V_{\alpha xy} - H \left( z_\alpha - \zeta \right) \left( h V_\alpha \right)_{xy} + H \zeta_x \left\{ \zeta V_{\alpha y} + \left( h V_\alpha \right)_y \right\}$$
(C.10)

$$G_{1} = \frac{H}{2} \left( \zeta^{2} - z_{\alpha}^{2} \right) U_{\alpha x y} - H \left( z_{\alpha} - \zeta \right) \left( h U_{\alpha} \right)_{x y} + H \zeta_{y} \left\{ \zeta U_{\alpha x} + (h U_{\alpha})_{x} \right\}$$
(C.11)

 $F_v^p, G_v^p, F_v^c$  and  $G_v^c$  are rewritten by

$$F_{v}^{p} = \frac{H^{n} \left(\zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2} + 3z_{\alpha}^{2}\right)^{n}}{6} \left\{ 2 \left(\psi^{x}\right)^{n} - 3 \left(\psi^{x}\right)^{n-1} + \left(\psi^{x}\right)^{n-2} \right\} - \frac{H^{n} \left(\zeta - h - 2z_{\alpha}\right)^{n}}{2} \left\{ 2 \left(\psi^{x}\zeta\right)^{n} - 3 \left(\psi^{x}\zeta\right)^{n-1} + \left(\psi^{x}\zeta\right)^{n-2} \right\}$$
(C.12)

$$G_{v}^{p} = \frac{H^{n} \left(\zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2} + 3z_{\alpha}^{2}\right)^{n}}{6} \left\{ 2 \left(\psi^{y}\right)^{n} - 3 \left(\psi^{y}\right)^{n-1} + \left(\psi^{y}\right)^{n-2} \right\} - \frac{H^{n} \left(\zeta - h - 2z_{\alpha}\right)^{n}}{2} \left\{ 2 \left(\psi^{y}\zeta\right)^{n} - 3 \left(\psi^{y}\zeta\right)^{n-1} + \left(\psi^{y}\zeta\right)^{n-2} \right\}$$
(C.13)

$$F_{v}^{c} = \frac{H^{n+1} \left(\zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2} + 3z_{\alpha}^{2}\right)^{n+1}}{6} \left\{ (\psi^{x})^{n+1} - (\psi^{x})^{n} \right\} - \frac{H^{n+1} \left(\zeta - h - 2z_{\alpha}\right)^{n+1}}{2} \left\{ (\psi^{x}\zeta)^{n+1} - (\psi^{x}\zeta)^{n} \right\}$$
(C.14)

$$G_{v}^{c} = \frac{H^{n+1} \left(\zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2} + 3z_{\alpha}^{2}\right)^{n+1}}{6} \left\{ (\psi^{y})^{n+1} - (\psi^{y})^{n} \right\} - \frac{H^{n+1} \left(\zeta - h - 2z_{\alpha}\right)^{n+1}}{2} \left\{ (\psi^{y}\zeta)^{n+1} - (\psi^{y}\zeta)^{n} \right\}$$
(C.15)

## Appendix D

## Derivation of Momentum Equation in Wave-Current Model

Vertical momentum equation, Equation 3.7 with the use of Equation 3.25 will give,

$$\mu^{2} \{ (w_{0})_{t} + \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla w_{0} + w_{0} (w_{0})_{z} \} + p_{z} + 1 = O \left( \mu^{4}, \alpha \mu^{3}, \beta \mu^{3} \right)$$
(D.1)

Integrating this equation in z direction from z to  $\zeta$  then gives an vertical expression of pressure field including hydrodynamic terms as,

$$p = \zeta - z + \mu^{2} \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( z^{2} - \zeta^{2} \right) S_{t} + (z - \zeta) T_{t} + \frac{1}{2} \left( z^{2} - \zeta^{2} \right) \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla S + (z - \zeta) \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla T - \frac{1}{2} \left( z^{2} - \zeta^{2} \right) S^{2} - (z - \zeta) TS \right\} + O \left( \mu^{4}, \alpha \mu^{3}, \beta \mu^{3} \right)$$
(D.2)

Note that we used Equation 3.15. To derive a horizontal momentum equation of depth-integrated form, we first substitute Equation 3.25 and D.2 into Equation 3.6. Accordingly, unsteady term can be expressed as,

$$u_{t} = (u_{\alpha})_{t} + \mu^{2} \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2} \right) \nabla S + (z_{\alpha} - z) \nabla T \right\}_{t} \\ + \mu^{2} \left[ \Psi \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2} \right) + \zeta \left( z - z_{\alpha} \right) \right\} \right]_{t} \\ + \mu^{2} \left[ \Psi_{b} \left\{ -\frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2} \right) + h \left( z - z_{\alpha} \right) \right\} \right]_{t} \\ + O(\mu^{4})$$
(D.3)

Horizontal convection term is given as,

$$\boldsymbol{u} \cdot \nabla \boldsymbol{u} = \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} + \mu^{2} \nabla \left[ \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2} \right) \nabla S + (z_{\alpha} - z) \nabla T \right\} \right] \\ + \mu^{2} \nabla \left[ \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \boldsymbol{\Psi} \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2} \right) + \zeta \left( z - z_{\alpha} \right) \right\} \right] \\ + \mu^{2} \nabla \left[ \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \boldsymbol{\Psi}_{b} \left\{ -\frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2} \right) + h \left( z - z_{\alpha} \right) \right\} \right] \\ + \mu^{2} \nabla \left[ \boldsymbol{u}_{W\alpha} \cdot \left\{ \boldsymbol{u}_{C} - \boldsymbol{u}_{C\alpha} \right\} \right] \\ + \mu^{2} \left( \boldsymbol{\xi}^{p} + \boldsymbol{\xi}^{t} + \boldsymbol{\xi}^{c} \right) + O(\mu^{4})$$
(D.4)

by virtue of vector identity,  $\nabla (A \cdot B) = A \cdot \nabla B + B \cdot \nabla A + A \times (\nabla \times B) + B \times (\nabla \times A)$ , which spawns  $\boldsymbol{\xi}^p$ ,  $\boldsymbol{\xi}^t$  and  $\boldsymbol{\xi}^c$  terms defined respectively as,

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}^{p} = - \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \times \left[ \nabla \times \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2} \right) \nabla S + \left( z_{\alpha} - z \right) \nabla T \right\} \right] \\ - \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2} \right) \nabla S + \left( z_{\alpha} - z \right) \nabla T \right\} \times \left( \nabla \times \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \right)$$
(D.5)

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}^{t} = - \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \times (\nabla \times \boldsymbol{\Psi}) \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2} \right) + \zeta \left( z - z_{\alpha} \right) \right\} - \boldsymbol{\Psi} \times (\nabla \times \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha}) \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2} \right) + \zeta \left( z - z_{\alpha} \right) \right\} - \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \times (\nabla \times \boldsymbol{\Psi}_{b}) \left\{ -\frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2} \right) + h \left( z - z_{\alpha} \right) \right\} - \boldsymbol{\Psi}_{b} \times (\nabla \times \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha}) \left\{ -\frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2} \right) + h \left( z - z_{\alpha} \right) \right\}$$
(D.6)

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}^{c} = -\boldsymbol{u}_{W\alpha} \times \{\nabla \times (\boldsymbol{u}_{C} - \boldsymbol{u}_{C\alpha})\} - (\boldsymbol{u}_{C} - \boldsymbol{u}_{C\alpha}) \times (\nabla \times \boldsymbol{u}_{W\alpha})$$
(D.7)

Of note, these terms are associated to vertical vorticity which can be incurred from either horizontally rotational or irrotational flows (Chen et al. (2003)).

Vertical convective term becomes,

$$w(\boldsymbol{u})_{z} = \mu^{2} \left( z^{2} S \nabla S + z T \nabla S + z S \nabla T + T \nabla T + w_{0} \boldsymbol{\Omega}_{1} \right) + O(\mu^{4})$$
(D.8)

And pressure gradient term on the right hand side of Equation 3.6 produces,

$$\begin{aligned} \nabla p &= \nabla \zeta \\ &+ \mu^2 \left\{ \frac{1}{2} z^2 \nabla S_t - \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( \zeta^2 S_t \right) + z \nabla T_t - \nabla \left( \zeta T_t \right) + \frac{1}{2} z^2 \nabla \left( \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla S \right) \right. \\ &- \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( \zeta^2 \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla S \right) + z \nabla \left( \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla T \right) - \nabla \left( \zeta \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla T \right) - \frac{1}{2} z^2 \nabla S^2 \\ &+ \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( \zeta^2 S^2 \right) - z \nabla \left( TS \right) + \nabla \left( \zeta TS \right) \right\} \\ &+ O(\mu^4, \alpha \mu^3, \beta \mu^3) \end{aligned} \tag{D.9}$$

Then, horizontal and vertical viscosity terms are written,
$$\alpha\mu\nabla\cdot\left(\nu_t^h\nabla\boldsymbol{u}\right) = \alpha\mu\nabla\cdot\left(\nu_t^h\nabla\boldsymbol{u}_\alpha\right) + O(\alpha\mu^3) \tag{D.10}$$

$$\frac{\beta}{\mu} \left( \nu_t^v \boldsymbol{u}_z \right)_z = -\beta \mu \nu_t^v \nabla S - \beta \mu \frac{\boldsymbol{\tau}_b}{\rho(\zeta + h)} + \beta \mu \frac{\boldsymbol{\tau}_{bb}}{\rho(\zeta + h)} + \beta \mu \nu_t^v \left( \boldsymbol{u}_C \right)_{zz} + O(\beta \mu^3)$$
(D.11)

Adding up all these components subsequently makes the depth-integrated momentum equations as,

$$\begin{aligned} (\boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha})_{t} &+ \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} + \nabla \zeta \\ &+ \mu^{2} \frac{1}{2} z_{\alpha}^{2} \nabla S_{t} + \mu^{2} z_{\alpha} \nabla T_{t} - \mu^{2} \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( \zeta^{2} S_{t} \right) - \mu^{2} \nabla \left( \zeta T_{t} \right) + \mu^{2} T \nabla T \\ &+ \mu^{2} \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( \zeta^{2} \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla S \right) + \mu^{2} \nabla \left( z_{\alpha} \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla T \right) + \mu^{2} \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( \zeta^{2} S^{2} \right) \\ &- \mu^{2} \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( \zeta^{2} \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla S \right) - \mu^{2} \nabla \left( \zeta \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla T \right) + \mu^{2} \nabla \left( \zeta T S \right) \\ &+ \mu^{2} \left[ \Psi \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2} \right) + \zeta \left( z - z_{\alpha} \right) \right\} \right]_{t} \\ &+ \mu^{2} \nabla \left[ \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \Psi \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2} \right) + h \left( z - z_{\alpha} \right) \right\} \right] \\ &+ \mu^{2} \nabla \left[ \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \Psi \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2} \right) + h \left( z - z_{\alpha} \right) \right\} \right] \\ &+ \mu^{2} \nabla \left\{ \boldsymbol{u}_{W\alpha} \cdot \left( \boldsymbol{u}_{C} - \boldsymbol{u}_{C\alpha} \right) \right\} + \mu^{2} \left( w_{0} \boldsymbol{\Omega}_{1} \right) + \mu^{2} \left( \boldsymbol{\xi}^{p} + \boldsymbol{\xi}^{t} + \boldsymbol{\xi}^{c} \right) \\ &- \alpha \mu \nabla \cdot \left( \nu_{t}^{h} \nabla \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \right) + \beta \mu \nu_{t}^{v} \nabla S + \beta \mu \frac{\boldsymbol{\tau}_{b}}{\rho(\zeta + h)} - \beta \mu \frac{\boldsymbol{\tau}_{bb}}{\rho(\zeta + h)} \\ &- \beta \mu \nu_{t}^{v} \left( \boldsymbol{u}_{C} \right)_{zz} \end{aligned}$$
(D.12)

Now our concern turns to elimination of z dependency, as a final effort. Among others, depth-averaging procedure proposed by Chen(2006) is employed to get the depthintegrated momentum equation without any z dependency. Except depth-invariant terms, i.e., terms from irrotational velocity, all others including  $\boldsymbol{\xi}^p$  should be depth-averaged defined as, for example,

$$\frac{1}{\zeta + h} \int_{-h}^{\zeta} z^2 dz = \frac{1}{3} \left( \zeta^2 - \zeta h + h^2 \right)$$
(D.13)

The final equation is provided in the main body of the dissertation.

### Appendix E

#### Numerical Scheme in Wave-Current Model

The system of equations are discretized to develop numerical solutions. All the spatial derivative terms are discretized by using a conservative finite volume method, while the temporal derivative terms by third-order Adams-Bashforth predictor and the fourth-order Adams-Moulton corrector scheme. For the application of finite volume method, governing equations are in a conservative form to effectively represent conservation laws. Subsequently, a complete set of equations in a conservative form can be obtained by equating each term using an assumption of  $h_t = 0$ .

$$(\zeta + h)_t + \{(\zeta + h) u_\alpha\}_x + \{(\zeta + h) v_\alpha\}_y + \mathcal{C} = 0$$
 (E.1)

$$\{ (\zeta + h) u_{\alpha} \}_{t} + \left\{ (\zeta + h) u_{\alpha}^{2} + \frac{1}{2} g (\zeta + h)^{2} \right\}_{x} + \{ (\zeta + h) u_{\alpha} v_{\alpha} \}_{y}$$
  
-  $g (\zeta + h) h_{x} + (\zeta + h) \mathcal{M}^{x} + u_{\alpha} \mathcal{C} = 0$  (E.2)

$$\{ (\zeta + h) v_{\alpha} \}_{t} + \{ (\zeta + h) u_{\alpha} v_{\alpha} \}_{x} + \left\{ (\zeta + h) v_{\alpha}^{2} + \frac{1}{2} g (\zeta + h)^{2} \right\}_{y}$$
  
-  $g (\zeta + h) h_{y} + (\zeta + h) \mathcal{M}^{y} + v_{\alpha} \mathcal{C} = 0$  (E.3)

where

$$\mathcal{C} = \left(\mathcal{N}^p + \mathcal{N}^t + \mathcal{N}^c\right) \tag{E.4}$$

$$(\mathcal{M}^{x}, \mathcal{M}^{y}) = \mathcal{H}^{p} + \mathcal{H}^{t} + \mathcal{H}^{c} + \overline{\boldsymbol{\xi}^{p}} + \overline{\boldsymbol{\xi}^{t}} + \overline{\boldsymbol{\xi}^{c}}$$
$$- \nabla \cdot \left(\nu_{t}^{h} \nabla \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha}\right) + \nu_{t}^{v} \nabla S + \frac{\boldsymbol{\tau}_{b}}{\left(\zeta + h\right)\rho} - \frac{\boldsymbol{\tau}_{bb}}{\left(\zeta + h\right)\rho}$$
$$- \nu_{t}^{v} \left\{ (\boldsymbol{u}_{C})_{z} |_{z=\zeta} - (\boldsymbol{u}_{C})_{z} |_{z=-h} \right\}$$
(E.5)

Note that all physical parameters are valued in units without \*. Strictly speaking, above governing system is not yet casted in strong conservative form(thus weak-conservative form) due to the bottom slope term as well as higher order terms, which are thought of as sources or sinks in the equations. The presence of such terms prevents the achievement of overall conservation of mass and momentum, which may thus lead to inferior shock capturing capability in regions of very large shock curvature(Vinokur(1974)). Bottom slope term of leading order, therefore, needs some special treatment to physically and numerically satisfy the conservation law. In this study, surface gradient method introduced by Zhou et al.(2001) is employed to preserve conservative property of mass and momentum even in stationary flow condition.

#### E.1 Finite Volume Method

Godunov scheme coupled with a Riemann solver is one of the most successful technique to solve hyperbolic system of conservation laws. As a practical advantage for hydrodynamic modeling, it is capable to capture the shock-like discontinuities such as bores by wave breaking or hydraulic jumps by abrupt bathymetric changes. Since the higher order discretization is required for high degree of accuracy, the high frequency oscillation errors due to over- or under-shoot are anticipated when using a classic Godunov scheme. Socalled Godunov theorem proved that linear scheme can not be free of spurious oscillations to get higher order accuracy and this urges the needs for TVD treatment by means of reconstructing. Therefore, fourth-order compact MUSCL-TVD(Monotone Upstreamcentered Scheme for Conservation Law - TVD) scheme is used in this study to solve leading order conservative part of the governing equations(Kim et al.(2009)). Reconstructed values at each interface of piecewise volume, which usually are limited by slope limiter functions, can be then solved by approximated HLL Riemann solver(Toro (2002)). On the other hand, higer-order terms are discretized by a cell averaged finite volume method given by Lacor et al.(2003).

### E.2 Time Marching

The governing equations are marched through time by a third-order Adams-Bashforth predictor and a fourth-order Adams-Moulton corrector scheme.

At the predictor step, values at new time step (n + 1) are evaluated explicitly by known values at three time steps, (n - 2), (n - 1) and n, which can be described as

$$\zeta^{n+1} = \zeta^n + \frac{\Delta t}{12} \left( 23E^n - 16E^{n-1} + 5E^{n-2} \right)$$
(E.6)

$$P^{n+1} = P^{n} + \frac{\Delta t}{12} \left( 23F^{n} - 16F^{n-1} + 5F^{n-2} \right) + 2F_{1}^{n} - 3F_{1}^{n-1} + F_{1}^{n-2} + F_{v}^{p}$$
(E.7)

$$Q^{n+1} = Q^n + \frac{\Delta t}{12} \left( 23G^n - 16G^{n-1} + 5G^{n-2} \right) + 2G_1^n - 3G_1^{n-1} + G_1^{n-2} + G_v^p$$
(E.8)

where the superscript n denotes time step. And P, Q are defined as

$$P = (\zeta + h) u_{\alpha} + \frac{(\zeta + h)}{2} (z_{\alpha}^{2} - \zeta^{2}) (u_{\alpha})_{xx} + (\zeta + h) (z_{\alpha} - \zeta) (hu_{\alpha})_{xx} - (\zeta + h) \zeta_{x} \{\zeta (u_{\alpha})_{x} + (hu_{\alpha})_{x}\}$$
(E.9)

$$Q = (\zeta + h) v_{\alpha} + \frac{(\zeta + h)}{2} (z_{\alpha}^{2} - \zeta^{2}) (v_{\alpha})_{yy} + (\zeta + h) (z_{\alpha} - \zeta) (hv_{\alpha})_{yy} - (\zeta + h) \zeta_{y} \{\zeta (v_{\alpha})_{y} + (hv_{\alpha})_{y}\}$$
(E.10)

 $E, F, G, F_1, G_1, F_v^p, G_v^p, F_v^c, G_v^c$  in the above equations are defined respectively, as

$$E = E_{LO} + E_{HO} \tag{E.11}$$

$$F = F_{LO} + F_{HO} + u_{\alpha} E_{HO} \tag{E.12}$$

$$G = G_{LO} + G_{HO} + v_{\alpha} E_{HO} \tag{E.13}$$

 $E_{LO}, F_{LO}$ , and  $G_{LO}$  are rewritten by

$$E_{LO} = -\{(h+\zeta) u_{\alpha}\}_{x} - \{(h+\zeta) v_{\alpha}\}_{y}$$
(E.14)

$$F_{LO} = -\left\{ (h+\zeta) \, u_{\alpha}^2 + \frac{1}{2} g \, (h+\zeta)^2 \right\}_x - \left\{ (h+\zeta) \, u_{\alpha} v_{\alpha} \right\}_y + g \, (h+\zeta) \, h_x \tag{E.15}$$

$$G_{LO} = -\{(h+\zeta) u_{\alpha} v_{\alpha}\}_{x} - \left\{(h+\zeta) v_{\alpha}^{2} + \frac{1}{2}g(h+\zeta)^{2}\right\}_{y} + g(h+\zeta) h_{y}$$
(E.16)

and  $E_{HO}$ ,  $F_{HO}$ ,  $G_{HO}$ ,  $F_1$  and  $G_1$  are defined as

$$E_{HO} = \left[ (h+\zeta) \left\{ \left( \frac{\zeta^2 - \zeta h + h^2}{6} - \frac{1}{2} z_{\alpha}^2 \right) \nabla S + \left( \frac{\zeta - h}{2} - z_{\alpha} \right) \nabla T \right\} \right]_x \\ + \left[ (h+\zeta) \left\{ \left( \frac{\zeta^2 - \zeta h + h^2}{6} - \frac{1}{2} z_{\alpha}^2 \right) \nabla S + \left( \frac{\zeta - h}{2} - z_{\alpha} \right) \nabla T \right\} \right]_y \\ - \left[ (h+\zeta) \psi^x \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^2}{2} - z_{\alpha} \zeta + \frac{(2\zeta^2 - 2\zeta h - h^2)}{6} \right\} \right]_x \\ - \left[ (h+\zeta) \psi^y \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^2}{2} - z_{\alpha} \zeta + \frac{(2\zeta^2 - 2\zeta h - h^2)}{6} \right\} \right]_y \\ + \left[ (h+\zeta) \psi^x_b \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^2}{2} + z_{\alpha} \zeta - \frac{(2\zeta^2 + 2\zeta h - 2h^2)}{6} \right\} \right]_x \\ + \left[ (h+\zeta) \psi^y_b \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^2}{2} + z_{\alpha} \zeta - \frac{(2\zeta^2 + 2\zeta h - 2h^2)}{6} \right\} \right]_y \\ - \left[ \int_{-h}^{\zeta} u_C dz - (h+\zeta) u_{C\alpha} \right]_x - \left[ \int_{-h}^{\zeta} v_C dz - (h+\zeta) v_{C\alpha} \right]_y$$
(E.17)

$$\begin{aligned} (F_{HO}, G_{HO}) &= (h+\zeta) \left[ \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( \zeta^2 \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla S \right) + \nabla \left( \zeta \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla T \right) - \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( \zeta^2 S^2 \right) \right. \\ &- \left. \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( z_{\alpha}^2 \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla S \right) - \nabla \left( z_{\alpha} \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla T \right) - \nabla \left( \zeta T S \right) \right. \\ &- \left( T \nabla T \right) - \nabla \left\{ E \left( \zeta S + T \right) \right\} - \overline{\xi^{p}} \right] \\ &- E \left( \zeta S + T \right) \nabla \zeta - \frac{1}{2} \left( \zeta^2 - z_{\alpha}^2 \right) E \nabla S - \left( \zeta - z_{\alpha} \right) E \nabla T \right. \\ &+ \left. \left( h + \zeta \right) \left[ \frac{\left( \zeta^2 - \zeta h + h^2 \right)}{6} \nabla \left( \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \boldsymbol{\Psi} \right) - \frac{\left( \zeta - h \right)}{2} \nabla \left\{ \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \left( \boldsymbol{\Psi} \zeta \right) \right\} \right. \\ &+ \left. \boldsymbol{\Psi} \left\{ \frac{\left( \zeta^2 + \zeta h - 2h^2 \right) S}{6} + \frac{\left( h + \zeta \right) T}{2} \right\} \\ &- \left. \nabla \left\{ \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \left( \boldsymbol{\Psi} \left( \frac{z_{\alpha}^2}{2} - \zeta z_{\alpha} \right) \right) \right\} - \overline{\xi^{t}} \right] \\ &+ \left. \left( h + \zeta \right) \left[ \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^2}{2} - \frac{\left( \zeta^2 - \zeta h + h^2 \right)}{6} \right\} \nabla \left( \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \boldsymbol{\Psi}_{b} \right) \right. \\ &- \left. \left\{ \frac{\left( \zeta - h \right)}{2} - z_{\alpha} \right\} \nabla \left\{ \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \left( \boldsymbol{\Psi}_{b} h \right) \right\} \\ &+ \left. \boldsymbol{\Psi}_{b} \left\{ \frac{\left( 2\zeta^2 + \zeta h - h^2 \right) S}{6} + \frac{\left( h + \zeta \right) T}{2} \right\} \right] \\ &+ \left. \left( \zeta + h \right) \left\{ \nabla \left( \boldsymbol{u}_{W\alpha} \cdot \boldsymbol{u}_{C\alpha} \right) - \overline{\xi^{c}} \right\} - \nabla \left\{ \boldsymbol{u}_{W\alpha} \cdot \left( \int_{-h}^{\zeta} \boldsymbol{u}_{C} dz \right) \right\} \\ &+ \left. \left( \zeta S + T \right) \boldsymbol{u}_{C} \right|_{z=\zeta} + \left( hS - T \right) \boldsymbol{u}_{C} \right|_{z=-h} - S \left( \int_{-h}^{\zeta} \boldsymbol{u}_{C} dz \right) \\ &+ \left. \left( h + \zeta \right) \left[ \nabla \cdot \left( \nu_{h}^{h} \nabla \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \right) - \nu_{t}^{\nu} \nabla S - \frac{\tau_{b} - \tau_{bb}}{\left( \zeta + h \right) \rho} \\ &+ \left. \nu_{t}^{\nu} \left\{ \left( \boldsymbol{u}_{C} \right)_{z} \right\}_{z=\zeta} - \left( \boldsymbol{u}_{C} \right)_{z|z=-h} \right\} \right] \end{aligned}$$

$$F_{1} = \frac{1}{2} (h+\zeta) \left(\zeta^{2} - z_{\alpha}^{2}\right) (v_{\alpha})_{xy} - (h+\zeta) (z_{\alpha} - \zeta) (hv_{\alpha})_{xy} + (h+\zeta) \zeta_{x} \left\{\zeta (v_{\alpha})_{y} + (hv_{\alpha})_{y}\right\}$$
(E.19)

$$G_{1} = \frac{1}{2} (h + \zeta) \left( \zeta^{2} - z_{\alpha}^{2} \right) (u_{\alpha})_{xy} - (h + \zeta) (z_{\alpha} - \zeta) (hu_{\alpha})_{xy} + (h + \zeta) \zeta_{y} \{ \zeta (u_{\alpha})_{x} + (hu_{\alpha})_{x} \}$$
(E.20)

# $F_v^p,\,G_v^p,\,F_v^c$ and $G_v^c$ are rewritten by

$$F_{v}^{p} = \frac{(h+\zeta)^{n} \left(\zeta^{2}-\zeta h+h^{2}-3z_{\alpha}^{2}\right)^{n}}{6} \left\{ 2\left(\psi^{x}\right)^{n}-3\left(\psi^{x}\right)^{n-1}+\left(\psi^{x}\right)^{n-2}\right\} -\frac{(h+\zeta)^{n} \left(\zeta-h-2z_{\alpha}\right)^{n}}{2} \left\{ 2\left(\psi^{x}\zeta\right)^{n}-3\left(\psi^{x}\zeta\right)^{n-1}+\left(\psi^{x}\zeta\right)^{n-2}\right\} +\frac{(h+\zeta)^{n} \left(3z_{a}^{2}+6hz_{\alpha}-\zeta^{2}-2\zeta h+2h^{2}\right)^{n}}{6} \\\left\{ 2\left(\psi_{b}^{x}\right)^{n}-3\left(\psi_{b}^{x}\right)^{n-1}+\left(\psi_{b}^{x}\right)^{n-2}\right\}$$
(E.21)

$$G_{v}^{p} = \frac{(h+\zeta)^{n} \left(\zeta^{2}-\zeta h+h^{2}-3z_{\alpha}^{2}\right)^{n}}{6} \left\{ 2 \left(\psi^{y}\right)^{n}-3 \left(\psi^{y}\right)^{n-1}+\left(\psi^{y}\right)^{n-2} \right\} -\frac{(h+\zeta)^{n} \left(\zeta-h-2z_{\alpha}\right)^{n}}{2} \left\{ 2 \left(\psi^{y}\zeta\right)^{n}-3 \left(\psi^{y}\zeta\right)^{n-1}+\left(\psi^{y}\zeta\right)^{n-2} \right\} +\frac{(h+\zeta)^{n} \left(3z_{\alpha}^{2}+6hz_{\alpha}-\zeta^{2}-2\zeta h+2h^{2}\right)^{n}}{6} \\\left\{ 2 \left(\psi_{b}^{y}\right)^{n}-3 \left(\psi_{b}^{y}\right)^{n-1}+\left(\psi_{b}^{y}\right)^{n-2} \right\}$$
(E.22)

$$F_{v}^{c} = \frac{(h+\zeta)^{n+1} \left(\zeta^{2}-\zeta h+h^{2}-3z_{\alpha}^{2}\right)^{n+1}}{6} \left\{ (\psi^{x})^{n+1}-(\psi^{x})^{n} \right\} - \frac{(h+\zeta)^{n+1} \left(\zeta-h-2z_{\alpha}\right)^{n+1}}{2} \left\{ (\psi^{x}\zeta)^{n+1}-(\psi^{x}\zeta)^{n} \right\} + \frac{(h+\zeta)^{n+1} \left(3z_{\alpha}^{2}+6hz_{\alpha}-\zeta^{2}-2\zeta h+2h^{2}\right)^{n+1}}{6} \left\{ (\psi_{b}^{x})^{n+1}-(\psi_{b}^{x})^{n} \right\}$$
(E.23)

$$G_{v}^{c} = \frac{(h+\zeta)^{n+1} \left(\zeta^{2}-\zeta h+h^{2}-3z_{\alpha}^{2}\right)^{n+1}}{6} \left\{ (\psi^{y})^{n+1}-(\psi^{y})^{n} \right\} - \frac{(h+\zeta)^{n+1} \left(\zeta-h-2z_{\alpha}\right)^{n+1}}{2} \left\{ (\psi^{y}\zeta)^{n+1}-(\psi^{y}\zeta)^{n} \right\} + \frac{(h+\zeta)^{n+1} \left(3z_{\alpha}^{2}+6hz_{\alpha}-\zeta^{2}-2\zeta h+2h^{2}\right)^{n+1}}{6} \left\{ \left(\psi_{b}^{y}\right)^{n+1}-\left(\psi_{b}^{y}\right)^{n} \right\}$$
(E.24)

With values at all four time steps including (n + 1), whose values are resulted by predictor step, another new values at time step (n + 1) are obtained through implicit corrector step.

$$\zeta^{n+1} = \zeta^n + \frac{\Delta t}{24} \left(9E^{n+1} + 19E^n - 5E^{n-1} + E^{n-2}\right)$$
(E.25)

$$P^{n+1} = P^{n} + \frac{\Delta t}{24} \left(9F^{n+1} + 19F^{n} - 5F^{n-1} + F^{n-2}\right) + F_{1}^{n+1} - F_{1}^{n} + F_{v}^{c}$$
(E.26)

$$Q^{n+1} = Q^{n} + \frac{\Delta t}{24} \left(9G^{n+1} + 19G^{n} - 5G^{n-1} + G^{n-2}\right) + G_{1}^{n+1} - G_{1}^{n} + G_{v}^{c}$$
(E.27)

Once this interative step ensures the relative error between the values at predictor and at corrector is less then 0.0001, the velocity components,  $u_{\alpha}$  and  $v_{\alpha}$  can be extracted from P and Q using tridiagonal matrix, which come from the discretized version of Equation E.9 and E.10,

$$P = (u_{\alpha})_{i-1,j} (\zeta + h_{i,j}) \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2} - \zeta^{2}}{2\Delta x^{2}} + \frac{(z_{\alpha} - \zeta) h_{i-1,j}}{\Delta x^{2}} + \frac{\zeta_{x}\zeta}{2\Delta x} + \frac{\zeta_{x}h_{i-1,j}}{2\Delta x} \right\}$$
  
+  $(u_{\alpha})_{i,j} (\zeta + h_{i,j}) \left\{ 1 - \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2} - \zeta^{2}}{\Delta x^{2}} - \frac{2(z_{\alpha} - \zeta) h_{i,j}}{\Delta x^{2}} \right\}$  (E.28)  
+  $(u_{\alpha})_{i+1,j} (\zeta + h_{i,j}) \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2} - \zeta^{2}}{2\Delta x^{2}} + \frac{(z_{\alpha} - \zeta) h_{i+1,j}}{\Delta x^{2}} - \frac{\zeta_{x}\zeta}{2\Delta x} - \frac{\zeta_{x}h_{i-1,j}}{2\Delta x} \right\}$ 

$$Q = (v_{\alpha})_{i,j-1} (\zeta + h_{i,j}) \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2} - \zeta^{2}}{2\Delta y^{2}} + \frac{(z_{\alpha} - \zeta) h_{i,j-1}}{\Delta y^{2}} + \frac{\zeta_{y}\zeta}{2\Delta y} + \frac{\zeta_{y}h_{i,j-1}}{2\Delta y} \right\} + (v_{\alpha})_{i,j} (\zeta + h_{i,j}) \left\{ 1 - \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2} - \zeta^{2}}{\Delta y^{2}} - \frac{2(z_{\alpha} - \zeta) h_{i,j}}{\Delta y^{2}} \right\}$$
(E.29)  
+  $(v_{\alpha})_{i,j+1} (\zeta + h_{i,j}) \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2} - \zeta^{2}}{2\Delta y^{2}} + \frac{(z_{\alpha} - \zeta) h_{i,j+1}}{\Delta y^{2}} - \frac{\zeta_{y}\zeta}{2\Delta y} - \frac{\zeta_{y}h_{i,j-1}}{2\Delta y} \right\}$ 

where subscript (i, j) identifies cell location.

### Appendix F

# Derivation of Momentum Equation of Boussinesq Model for Variable Density Fluid Flows

From the vertical momentum equation, the pressure field will be extracted. Substituting Equation 4.22 into Equation 4.5 yields

$$\mu^{2} \rho_{0} \left\{ (w_{0})_{t} + \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla w_{0} + w_{0} (w_{0})_{z} \right\} + p_{z} + \rho_{0} \left\{ 1 - \gamma \tanh\left(\frac{z - z_{0}}{\delta}\right) \right\}$$
  
=  $O\left(\mu^{4}, \alpha \mu^{3}, \beta \mu^{3}, \gamma \mu^{2}\right)$  (F.1)

Integrating the equation above with respect to z provides the expression for pressure,

$$p = \rho_0 \left(\zeta - z\right) - \gamma \delta \rho_0 \left[ \ln \left\{ \cosh \left( \frac{\zeta - z_0}{\delta} \right) \right\} - \ln \left\{ \cosh \left( \frac{z - z_0}{\delta} \right) \right\} \right] + \mu^2 \rho_0 \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( z^2 - \zeta^2 \right) S_t + \left( z - \zeta \right) T_t + \frac{1}{2} \left( z^2 - \zeta^2 \right) \boldsymbol{u}_\alpha \cdot \nabla S + \left( z - \zeta \right) \boldsymbol{u}_\alpha \cdot \nabla T - \frac{1}{2} \left( z^2 - \zeta^2 \right) S^2 - \left( z - \zeta \right) TS \right\} + O \left( \mu^4, \alpha \mu^3, \beta \mu^3, \gamma \mu^2 \right)$$
(F.2)

It is noted that Equation 4.12 has also be applied in the above equation.

To derive a depth-integrated momentum equation for  $u_{\alpha}$ , Equation 4.22 and F.2 can be applied to Equation 4.4 where each term is written as,

$$\rho \boldsymbol{u}_{t} = \rho_{0} \left(\boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha}\right)_{t} - \gamma \tanh\left(\frac{z-z_{0}}{\delta}\right) \rho_{0} \left(\boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha}\right)_{t} + \mu^{2} \rho_{0} \left(\boldsymbol{u}^{i}\right)_{t} \\ + \mu^{2} \rho_{0} \left\{\frac{1}{2} \left(z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2}\right) \nabla S + (z_{\alpha} - z) \nabla T\right\}_{t} \\ + \mu^{2} \rho_{0} \left[\boldsymbol{\Psi} \left\{\frac{1}{2} \left(z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2}\right) + \zeta \left(z - z_{\alpha}\right)\right\}\right]_{t} \\ + O(\mu^{4}, \gamma \mu^{2})$$
(F.3)

$$\rho \boldsymbol{u} \cdot \nabla \boldsymbol{u} = \rho_0 \boldsymbol{u}_\alpha \cdot \nabla \boldsymbol{u}_\alpha - \gamma \tanh\left(\frac{z-z_0}{\delta}\right) \rho_0 \boldsymbol{u}_\alpha \cdot \nabla \boldsymbol{u}_\alpha + \mu^2 \rho_0 \nabla\left(\boldsymbol{u}_\alpha \cdot \boldsymbol{u}^i\right) + \mu^2 \rho_0 \nabla\left[\boldsymbol{u}_\alpha \cdot \left\{\frac{1}{2}\left(z_\alpha^2 - z^2\right) \nabla S + (z_\alpha - z) \nabla T\right\}\right] + \mu^2 \rho_0 \nabla\left[\boldsymbol{u}_\alpha \cdot \boldsymbol{\Psi}\left\{\frac{1}{2}\left(z_\alpha^2 - z^2\right) + \zeta\left(z - z_\alpha\right)\right\}\right] + \mu^2 \rho_0 \boldsymbol{\xi} + O(\mu^4, \gamma \mu^2)$$
(F.4)

$$\rho w \left( \boldsymbol{u} \right)_{z} = \mu^{2} \rho_{0} \left( z^{2} S \nabla S + z T \nabla S + z S \nabla T + T \nabla T + w_{0} \boldsymbol{\omega}_{1} \right) + O(\mu^{4}, \gamma \mu^{2})$$
(F.5)

$$\nabla p = \nabla \left\{ \rho_0 \left( \zeta - z \right) \right\} 
- \gamma \nabla \left( \rho_0 \delta \left[ \ln \left\{ \cosh \left( \frac{\zeta - z_0}{\delta} \right) \right\} - \ln \left\{ \cosh \left( \frac{z - z_0}{\delta} \right) \right\} \right] \right) 
+ \mu^2 \rho_0 \left\{ \frac{1}{2} z^2 \nabla S_t - \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( \zeta^2 S_t \right) + z \nabla T_t - \nabla \left( \zeta T_t \right) + \frac{1}{2} z^2 \nabla \left( u_\alpha \cdot \nabla S \right) 
- \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( \zeta^2 u_\alpha \cdot \nabla S \right) + z \nabla \left( u_\alpha \cdot \nabla T \right) - \nabla \left( \zeta u_\alpha \cdot \nabla T \right) - \frac{1}{2} z^2 \nabla S^2 
+ \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( \zeta^2 S^2 \right) - z \nabla \left( TS \right) + \nabla \left( \zeta TS \right) \right\} 
+ \mu^2 \left( \nabla \rho_0 \right) \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( z^2 - \zeta^2 \right) S_t + \left( z - \zeta \right) T_t + \frac{1}{2} \left( z^2 - \zeta^2 \right) u_\alpha \cdot \nabla S 
+ \left( z - \zeta \right) u_\alpha \cdot \nabla T - \frac{1}{2} \left( z^2 - \zeta^2 \right) S^2 - \left( z - \zeta \right) TS \right\} 
+ O(\mu^4, \alpha \mu^3, \beta \mu^3, \gamma \mu^2)$$
(F.6)

$$\alpha\mu\nabla\cdot\left(\rho\nu_t^h\nabla\boldsymbol{u}\right) = \alpha\mu\nabla\cdot\left(\rho_0\nu_t^h\nabla\boldsymbol{u}_\alpha\right) + O(\alpha\mu^3,\alpha\gamma\mu) \tag{F.7}$$

$$\frac{\beta}{\mu} \left(\rho \nu_t^v \boldsymbol{u}_z\right)_z = -\beta \mu \rho_0 \nu_t^v \nabla S - \beta \mu \frac{\boldsymbol{\tau}_b}{\zeta + h} + \beta \mu \rho_0 \nu_t^v \left(\boldsymbol{u}^i\right)_{zz} + O(\beta \mu^3, \beta \gamma \mu)$$
(F.8)

In Equation F.4,  $\boldsymbol{\xi}$  is defined as,

$$\boldsymbol{\xi} = - \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \times \left[ \nabla \times \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2} \right) \nabla S + \left( z_{\alpha} - z \right) \nabla T \right\} \right] \\ - \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2} \right) \nabla S + \left( z_{\alpha} - z \right) \nabla T \right\} \times \left( \nabla \times \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \right) \\ - \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \times \left( \nabla \times \boldsymbol{u}^{i} \right) - \boldsymbol{u}^{i} \times \left( \nabla \times \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \right) \\ - \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \times \left( \nabla \times \boldsymbol{\Psi} \right) \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2} \right) + \zeta \left( z - z_{\alpha} \right) \right\} \\ - \boldsymbol{\Psi} \times \left( \nabla \times \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \right) \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2} \right) + \zeta \left( z - z_{\alpha} \right) \right\}$$
(F.9)

Equation F.3 to F.8 are substituted into Equation 4.4 to produce the horizontal momentum equation written in terms of  $u_{\alpha}$ . Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} (\boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha})_{t} &+ \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} + \nabla \zeta + \frac{\nabla \rho_{0}}{\rho_{0}} \left( \zeta - z \right) \\ &+ \mu^{2} \left\{ -\frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( \zeta^{2} S_{t} \right) - \nabla \left( \zeta T_{t} \right) + \frac{1}{2} \zeta^{2} \nabla S_{t} + z_{\alpha} \nabla T_{t} \\ &- \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( \zeta^{2} \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla S \right) - \nabla \left( \zeta \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla T \right) + \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( \zeta^{2} S^{2} \right) \\ &+ \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla S \right) + \nabla \left( z_{\alpha} \boldsymbol{u} \cdot \nabla T \right) + T \nabla T + \nabla \left( \zeta T S \right) \right\} \\ &+ \mu^{2} \left[ \boldsymbol{\Psi} \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2} \right) + \zeta \left( z - z_{\alpha} \right) \right\} \right]_{t} \\ &+ \mu^{2} \nabla \left[ \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \boldsymbol{\Psi} \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( z_{\alpha}^{2} - z^{2} \right) + \zeta \left( z - z_{\alpha} \right) \right\} \right] \\ &- \mu^{2} \boldsymbol{\Psi} \left( \zeta - z \right) \left( zS + T \right) + \mu^{2} \boldsymbol{\xi} + \mu^{2} \left( \boldsymbol{u}_{t}^{i} + \nabla \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \boldsymbol{u}^{i} \right) \\ &+ \mu^{2} \frac{\nabla \rho_{0}}{\rho_{0}} \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( z^{2} - \zeta^{2} \right) S_{t} + \left( z - \zeta \right) T_{t} + \frac{1}{2} \left( z^{2} - \zeta^{2} \right) \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla S \right. \\ &+ \left( z - \zeta \right) \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla T - \frac{1}{2} \left( z^{2} - \zeta^{2} \right) S^{2} - \left( z - \zeta \right) TS \right\} \\ &- \gamma \left\{ \tanh \left( \frac{z - z_{0}}{\delta} \right) \left( \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \right)_{t} - \tanh \left( \frac{z - z_{0}}{\delta} \right) \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \right. \\ &- \left. \frac{1}{\rho_{0}} \nabla \left( \rho_{0} \delta \left[ \ln \left\{ \cosh \left( \frac{\zeta - z_{0}}{\delta} \right) \right\} - \ln \left\{ \cosh \left( \frac{z - z_{0}}{\delta} \right) \right\} \right] \right) \right\} \\ &= \alpha \mu \frac{1}{\rho_{0}} \nabla \cdot \left( \rho_{0} \nu_{t}^{h} \nabla \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \right) \\ &- \beta \mu \nu_{t}^{\eta} \nabla S - \beta \mu \frac{1}{\rho_{0}} \frac{\tau_{b}}{\zeta + h} + \beta \mu \nu_{t}^{\eta} \left( \boldsymbol{u}^{i} \right)_{zz} \end{aligned}$$

Now, the remaining procedure is to eliminate z dependency in the above equation; depth-averaging is employed (i.e. Chen(2006)) over the entire equation. This final equation is provided in the main body of the dissertation.

#### Appendix G

# Numerical Formulation of Boussinesq Model for Variable Density Fluid Flows

The derived Equations 4.24 and 4.29 will be discretized to find numerical solutions. In the present work, a conservative-form finite volume method is adopted for spatial derivatives while 3rd order Adams-Bashforth predictor and 4th order Adams-Moulton corrector scheme is used for time integration.

Prior to discretization of the governing system, Equation 4.24 and 4.29 are converted to the conservative form before applying the finite volume method. In this section, all dimensions are recovered with primes(') omitted for convenience. Utilizing a fixed bottom assumption( $h_t = 0$ ), the conservative form of the continuity and momentum equations can be obtained as,

$$H_t + (Hu_\alpha)_x + (Hv_\alpha)_y + (\mathcal{N}_D + \mathcal{N}_B + \mathcal{N}_I) = 0$$
 (G.1)

$$(Hu_{\alpha})_{t} + \left(Hu_{\alpha}^{2} + \frac{1}{2}gH^{2}\right)_{x} + (Hu_{\alpha}v_{\alpha})_{y} - gHh_{x} + \frac{1}{2}\frac{(\rho_{0})_{x}}{\rho_{0}}gH^{2} + H\mathcal{M}^{x} + u_{\alpha}\left(\mathcal{N}_{D} + \mathcal{N}_{B} + \mathcal{N}_{I}\right) = 0$$
(G.2)

$$(Hv_{\alpha})_{t} + (Hu_{\alpha}v_{\alpha})_{x} + \left(Hv_{\alpha}^{2} + \frac{1}{2}gH^{2}\right)_{y} - gHh_{y} + \frac{1}{2}\frac{(\rho_{0})_{y}}{\rho_{0}}gH^{2} + H\mathcal{M}^{y} + v_{\alpha}\left(\mathcal{N}_{D} + \mathcal{N}_{B} + \mathcal{N}_{I}\right) = 0$$
(G.3)

where  $H = \zeta + h$  and terms of  $O(\mu^2, \gamma, \alpha \mu, \beta \mu)$  are given by

$$(\mathcal{M}^{x}, \mathcal{M}^{y}) = \mathcal{R}_{D} + \mathcal{R}_{B} + \mathcal{R}_{I} + \mathcal{R}_{P}^{h} + \mathcal{R}_{P}^{v} + \overline{\boldsymbol{\xi}}$$
$$- \frac{1}{\rho_{0}} \nabla \cdot \left(\rho_{0} \nu_{t}^{h} \nabla \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha}\right) + \nu_{t}^{v} \nabla S + \frac{\boldsymbol{\tau}_{b}}{H\rho_{0}}$$
$$- \nu_{t}^{v} \left(\boldsymbol{u}_{z}^{i}|_{z=\zeta} - \boldsymbol{u}_{z}^{i}|_{z=-h}\right)$$
(G.4)

### G.1 Time Integration

Time derivative terms in the above equations are solved by a third-order Adams-Bashforth predictor and a fourth-order Adams-Moulton corrector scheme(Wei et al.(1995), Lynett and Liu(2002a)) to minimize truncation error to order of  $O(\Delta t^3)$ (Liu and Wang(2012)). Through an iterative predictor-corrector time-marching scheme, the solution at the next time step, (n + 1) can be found.

The explicit predictor step is given by,

$$\zeta^{n+1} = \zeta^n + \frac{\Delta t}{12} \left( 23E^n - 16E^{n-1} + 5E^{n-2} \right)$$
(G.5)

$$P^{n+1} = P^{n} + \frac{\Delta t}{12} \left( 23F^{n} - 16F^{n-1} + 5F^{n-2} \right) + 2F_{3}^{n} - 3F_{3}^{n-1} + F_{3}^{n-2} + F_{4}^{p}$$
(G.6)

$$Q^{n+1} = Q^n + \frac{\Delta t}{12} \left( 23G^n - 16G^{n-1} + 5G^{n-2} \right) + 2G_3^n - 3G_3^{n-1} + G_3^{n-2} + G_4^p$$
(G.7)

and the implicit corrector step is written as,

$$\zeta^{n+1} = \zeta^n + \frac{\Delta t}{24} \left(9E^{n+1} + 19E^n - 5E^{n-1} + E^{n-2}\right)$$
(G.8)

$$P^{n+1} = P^{n} + \frac{\Delta t}{24} \left(9F^{n+1} + 19F^{n} - 5F^{n-1} + F^{n-2}\right) + F_{3}^{n+1} - F_{3}^{n} + F_{4}^{c}$$
(G.9)

$$Q^{n+1} = Q^{n} + \frac{\Delta t}{24} \left(9G^{n+1} + 19G^{n} - 5G^{n-1} + G^{n-2}\right) + G_{3}^{n+1} - G_{3}^{n} + G_{4}^{c}$$
(G.10)

where the superscript n denotes time step and P, Q are defined numerically as (Kim et al.(2009))

$$P = (u_{\alpha})_{i-1,j} H_{i,j} \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2} - \zeta^{2}}{2\Delta x^{2}} + \frac{(z_{\alpha} - \zeta) h_{i-1,j}}{\Delta x^{2}} + \frac{\zeta_{x}\zeta}{2\Delta x} + \frac{\zeta_{x}h_{i-1,j}}{2\Delta x} \right\}$$
  
+  $(u_{\alpha})_{i,j} H_{i,j} \left\{ 1 - \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2} - \zeta^{2}}{\Delta x^{2}} - \frac{2(z_{\alpha} - \zeta) h_{i,j}}{\Delta x^{2}} \right\}$  (G.11)  
+  $(u_{\alpha})_{i+1,j} H_{i,j} \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2} - \zeta^{2}}{2\Delta x^{2}} + \frac{(z_{\alpha} - \zeta) h_{i+1,j}}{\Delta x^{2}} - \frac{\zeta_{x}\zeta}{2\Delta x} - \frac{\zeta_{x}h_{i-1,j}}{2\Delta x} \right\}$ 

$$Q = (v_{\alpha})_{i,j-1} H_{i,j} \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2} - \zeta^{2}}{2\Delta y^{2}} + \frac{(z_{\alpha} - \zeta) h_{i,j-1}}{\Delta y^{2}} + \frac{\zeta_{y}\zeta}{2\Delta y} + \frac{\zeta_{y}h_{i,j-1}}{2\Delta y} \right\}$$
  
+  $(v_{\alpha})_{i,j} H_{i,j} \left\{ 1 - \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2} - \zeta^{2}}{\Delta y^{2}} - \frac{2(z_{\alpha} - \zeta) h_{i,j}}{\Delta y^{2}} \right\}$   
+  $(v_{\alpha})_{i,j+1} H_{i,j} \left\{ \frac{z_{\alpha}^{2} - \zeta^{2}}{2\Delta y^{2}} + \frac{(z_{\alpha} - \zeta) h_{i,j+1}}{\Delta y^{2}} - \frac{\zeta_{y}\zeta}{2\Delta y} - \frac{\zeta_{y}h_{i,j-1}}{2\Delta y} \right\}$  (G.12)

Subscript (i, j) in P and Q identifies cell location. All other terms included in Equation G.5 to G.10 are given below:

$$E = E_1 + E_2$$
 (G.13)

$$F = F_1 + F_2 + u_{\alpha} E_2 \tag{G.14}$$

$$G = G_1 + G_1 + v_{\alpha} E_2 \tag{G.15}$$

 $E_1, F_1$ , and  $G_1$  are rewritten by

$$E_1 = -\{Hu_{\alpha}\}_x - \{Hv_{\alpha}\}_y$$
 (G.16)

$$F_1 = -\left\{Hu_{\alpha}^2 + \frac{1}{2}gH^2\right\}_x - \left\{Hu_{\alpha}v_{\alpha}\right\}_y + gHh_x - \frac{1}{2}\frac{(\rho_0)_x}{\rho_0}gH^2$$
(G.17)

$$G_1 = -\left\{Hu_{\alpha}v_{\alpha}\right\}_x - \left\{Hv_{\alpha}^2 + \frac{1}{2}gH^2\right\}_y + gHh_y - \frac{1}{2}\frac{(\rho_0)_y}{\rho_0}gH^2$$
(G.18)

and  $E_2$ ,  $F_2$ ,  $G_2$ ,  $F_3$ ,  $G_3$  are expressed as

$$E_{2} = \left[H\left\{\left(\frac{\zeta^{2}-\zeta h+h^{2}}{6}-\frac{1}{2}z_{\alpha}^{2}\right)\nabla S+\left(\frac{\zeta-h}{2}-z_{\alpha}\right)\nabla T\right\}\right]_{x}$$

$$+ \left[H\left\{\left(\frac{\zeta^{2}-\zeta h+h^{2}}{6}-\frac{1}{2}z_{\alpha}^{2}\right)\nabla S+\left(\frac{\zeta-h}{2}-z_{\alpha}\right)\nabla T\right\}\right]_{y}$$

$$- \left[H\psi^{x}\left\{\frac{z_{\alpha}^{2}}{2}-z_{\alpha}\zeta+\frac{\left(2\zeta^{2}-2\zeta h-h^{2}\right)}{6}\right\}\right]_{x}$$

$$- \left[H\psi^{y}\left\{\frac{z_{\alpha}^{2}}{2}-z_{\alpha}\zeta+\frac{\left(2\zeta^{2}-2\zeta h-h^{2}\right)}{6}\right\}\right]_{y}$$

$$- \left[H\overline{u^{i}}\right]_{x}-\left[H\overline{v^{i}}\right]_{y}$$
(G.19)

$$\begin{aligned} (F_2, G_2) &= H \left[ \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( \zeta^2 \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla S \right) + \nabla \left( \zeta \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla T \right) - \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( \zeta^2 S^2 \right) \right. \\ &- \left. \frac{1}{2} \nabla \left( z_{\alpha}^2 \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla S \right) - \nabla \left( z_{\alpha} \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla T \right) - \nabla \left( \zeta T S \right) \right. \\ &- \left. \left( T \nabla T \right) - \nabla \left\{ E \left( \zeta S + T \right) \right\} \right] - H \overline{\xi} \\ &- E \left( \zeta S + T \right) \nabla \zeta - \frac{1}{2} \left( \zeta^2 - z_{\alpha}^2 \right) E \nabla S - \left( \zeta - z_{\alpha} \right) E \nabla T \right. \\ &+ H \left[ \frac{\left( \zeta^2 - \zeta h + h^2 \right)}{6} \nabla \left( \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \Psi \right) - \frac{\left( \zeta - h \right)}{2} \nabla \left\{ \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \left( \Psi \zeta \right) \right\} \right. \\ &+ \left. \Psi \left\{ \frac{\left( \zeta^2 + \zeta h - 2h^2 \right) S}{6} + \frac{HT}{2} \right\} \\ &- \left. \nabla \left\{ \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \left( \Psi \left( \frac{z_{\alpha}^2}{2} - \zeta z_{\alpha} \right) \right) \right\} \right] - H \nabla \left( \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \overline{\boldsymbol{u}^i} \right) \\ &- \left. \frac{\nabla \rho_0}{\rho_0} \left\{ \frac{H (-2\zeta + h)}{6} \left( \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla S - S^2 \right) - \frac{H}{2} \left( \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla T - ST \right) \right\} \\ &- \left. \delta \left( \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \cdot \nabla \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \right) \left[ \ln \left\{ \cosh \left( \frac{-h - z_0}{\delta} \right) \right\} - \ln \left\{ \cosh \left( \frac{\zeta - z_0}{\delta} \right) \right\} \right] \\ &+ \left. \frac{H}{\rho_0} \nabla \left\{ \rho_0 \delta \ln \cosh \left( \frac{\zeta - z_0}{\delta} \right) \right\} \\ &- \left. \frac{1}{\rho_0} \int_{-h}^{\zeta} \nabla \left\{ \rho_0 \delta \ln \cosh \left( \frac{z - z_0}{\delta} \right) \right\} dz \\ &+ \left. H \left[ \frac{1}{\rho_0} \nabla \cdot \left( \rho_0 \nu_t^h \nabla \boldsymbol{u}_{\alpha} \right) - \nu_t^v \nabla S - \frac{\tau_b}{H\rho_0} \\ &+ \left. \nu_t^v \left\{ \boldsymbol{u}_z^i |_{z=\zeta} - \boldsymbol{u}_z^i |_{z=-h} \right\} \right] \end{aligned}$$

$$F_{3} = \frac{1}{2} H \left( \zeta^{2} - z_{\alpha}^{2} \right) (v_{\alpha})_{xy} - H (z_{\alpha} - \zeta) (hv_{\alpha})_{xy} + H \zeta_{x} \left\{ \zeta (v_{\alpha})_{y} + (hv_{\alpha})_{y} \right\}$$
(G.21)

$$G_{3} = \frac{1}{2} H \left( \zeta^{2} - z_{\alpha}^{2} \right) (u_{\alpha})_{xy} - H (z_{\alpha} - \zeta) (hu_{\alpha})_{xy} + H \zeta_{y} \left\{ \zeta (u_{\alpha})_{x} + (hu_{\alpha})_{x} \right\}$$
(G.22)

 $F_4^p, G_4^p, F_4^c$  and  $G_4^c$  are rewritten by

$$F_4^p = \frac{H^n \left(\zeta^2 - \zeta h + h^2 - 3z_\alpha^2\right)^n}{6} \Sigma^p(\psi^x) - \frac{H^n \left(\zeta - h - 2z_\alpha\right)^n}{2} \Sigma^p(\psi^x \zeta) + H^n \Sigma^p(\overline{u^i}) - \frac{H^n \left(h - 2\zeta\right)^n}{6} \frac{\left(\rho_0\right)_x}{\rho_0} \Sigma^p(S) + \frac{H^n}{2} \frac{\left(\rho_0\right)_x}{\rho_0} \Sigma^p(T) - \delta \left[\ln \left\{\cosh\left(\frac{-h - z_0}{\delta}\right)\right\} - \ln \left\{\cosh\left(\frac{\zeta - z_0}{\delta}\right)\right\}\right]^n \Sigma^p(u_\alpha)$$
(G.23)

$$G_4^p = \frac{H^n \left(\zeta^2 - \zeta h + h^2 - 3z_\alpha^2\right)^n}{6} \Sigma^p(\psi^y) - \frac{H^n \left(\zeta - h - 2z_\alpha\right)^n}{2} \Sigma^p(\psi^y \zeta) + H^n \Sigma^p \left(\overline{v^i}\right) - \frac{H^n \left(h - 2\zeta\right)^n}{6} \frac{\left(\rho_0\right)_y}{\rho_0} \Sigma^p(S) + \frac{H^n}{2} \frac{\left(\rho_0\right)_y}{\rho_0} \Sigma^p(T) - \delta \left[\ln \left\{\cosh\left(\frac{-h - z_0}{\delta}\right)\right\} - \ln \left\{\cosh\left(\frac{\zeta - z_0}{\delta}\right)\right\}\right]^n \Sigma^p(v_\alpha)$$
(G.24)

$$F_{4}^{c} = \frac{H^{n+1} \left(\zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2} - 3z_{\alpha}^{2}\right)^{n+1}}{6} \Sigma^{c}(\psi^{x}) - \frac{H^{n+1} \left(\zeta - h - 2z_{\alpha}\right)^{n+1}}{2} \Sigma^{c}(\psi^{x}\zeta) + H^{n+1} \Sigma^{c} \left(\overline{u^{i}}\right) - \frac{H^{n+1} \left(h - 2\zeta\right)^{n+1}}{6} \frac{(\rho_{0})_{x}}{\rho_{0}} \Sigma^{c}(S) + \frac{H^{n+1}}{2} \frac{(\rho_{0})_{x}}{\rho_{0}} \Sigma^{c}(T) - \delta \left[ \ln \left\{ \cosh \left( \frac{-h - z_{0}}{\delta} \right) \right\} - \ln \left\{ \cosh \left( \frac{\zeta - z_{0}}{\delta} \right) \right\} \right]^{n+1} \Sigma^{c}(u_{\alpha})$$
(G.25)

$$G_{4}^{c} = \frac{H^{n+1} \left(\zeta^{2} - \zeta h + h^{2} - 3z_{\alpha}^{2}\right)^{n+1}}{6} \Sigma^{c}(\psi^{y}) - \frac{H^{n+1} \left(\zeta - h - 2z_{\alpha}\right)^{n+1}}{2} \Sigma^{c}(\psi^{y}\zeta) + H^{n+1} \Sigma^{c} \left(\overline{v^{i}}\right) - \frac{H^{n+1} \left(h - 2\zeta\right)^{n+1}}{6} \frac{(\rho_{0})_{y}}{\rho_{0}} \Sigma^{c}(S) + \frac{H^{n+1}}{2} \frac{(\rho_{0})_{y}}{\rho_{0}} \Sigma^{c}(T) - \delta \left[ \ln \left\{ \cosh \left( \frac{-h - z_{0}}{\delta} \right) \right\} - \ln \left\{ \cosh \left( \frac{\zeta - z_{0}}{\delta} \right) \right\} \right]^{n+1} \Sigma^{c}(v_{\alpha})$$
(G.26)

where  $\Sigma^{p}(\phi) = 2\phi^{n} - 3\phi^{n-1} + \phi^{n-2}$  and  $\Sigma^{c}(\phi) = \phi^{n+1} - \phi^{n}$ .

### G.2 Spatial Discretization : Finite Volume Method

Recently, finite volume schemes coupled with Riemann solvers have been successfully applied to shallow water (Erduran et al.(2005)) and Boussinesq-type(Tonelli and Petti(2009), Kim et al.(2009), Shi et al.(2012)) equations, and have shown relatively robust performance. For the shallow water terms embedded in Equation G.1, G.2 and G.3, a 4th order compact MUSCL-TVD scheme has been applied and combined with the HLL Riemann solver(Kim et al.(2009)). The fractional volume flux determination procedure used in this study is described here. The interface value of any conservative quantity  $(q = H, Hu_{\alpha}, Hv_{\alpha})$  is constructed by,

$$q_{i+1/2}^{L} = q_i + \frac{1}{6} \left\{ \Delta^* \overline{q}_{i-1/2} + 2\Delta^* \widetilde{q}_{i+1/2} \right\}$$
(G.27)

$$q_{i+1/2}^R = q_{i+1} - \frac{1}{6} \left\{ 2\Delta^* \overline{q}_{i+1/2} + \Delta^* \widetilde{q}_{i+3/2} \right\}$$
(G.28)

where superscript L and R denotes the values at the left-hand and the right-hand side of the interface(i + 1/2), respectively.  $\Delta^* \overline{q}$  and  $\Delta^* \widetilde{q}$  in the above can be calculated from

$$\Delta^* \overline{q}_{i-1/2} = \operatorname{minmod} \left( \Delta^* q_{i-1/2}, b \Delta^* q_{i+1/2} \right)$$

$$\Delta^* \widetilde{q}_{i+1/2} = \operatorname{minmod} \left( \Delta^* q_{i+1/2}, b \Delta^* q_{i-1/2} \right)$$

$$\Delta^* \overline{q}_{i+1/2} = \operatorname{minmod} \left( \Delta^* q_{i+1/2}, b \Delta^* q_{i+3/2} \right)$$

$$\Delta^* \widetilde{q}_{i+3/2} = \operatorname{minmod} \left( \Delta^* q_{i+3/2}, b \Delta^* q_{i+1/2} \right)$$
(G.29)

in which

$$\Delta^* q_{i+1/2} = \Delta q_{i+1/2} - \frac{1}{6} \Delta^3 \overline{q}_{i+1/2} \tag{G.30}$$

$$\Delta^3 \overline{q}_{i+1/2} = \Delta \overline{q}_{i-1/2} - 2\Delta \overline{q}_{i+1/2} + \Delta \overline{q}_{i+3/2} \tag{G.31}$$

$$\Delta \overline{q}_{i-1/2} = \operatorname{minmod} \left( \Delta q_{i-1/2}, b_1 \Delta q_{i+1/2}, b_1 \Delta q_{i+3/2} \right) \Delta \overline{q}_{i+1/2} = \operatorname{minmod} \left( \Delta q_{i+1/2}, b_1 \Delta q_{i+3/2}, b_1 \Delta q_{i-1/2} \right) \Delta \overline{q}_{i+3/2} = \operatorname{minmod} \left( \Delta q_{i+3/2}, b_1 \Delta q_{i-1/2}, b_1 \Delta q_{i+1/2} \right)$$
(G.32)

The Minmod limiter function used in Equation G.29 and G.32 is defined by

$$\operatorname{minmod}(x, y) = \operatorname{sign}(x) \max \left[0, \min\left\{|x|, y \operatorname{sign}(x)\right\}\right]$$

$$\operatorname{minmod}(x, y, z) = \operatorname{sign}(x) \max \left[0, \min\left\{|x|, y \operatorname{sign}(x), z \operatorname{sign}(x)\right\}\right]$$
(G.33)

The coefficients b and  $b_1$  in Equation G.29 and G.32 are set to 2 and 4, respectively. It is noted that ignoring the 3rd order component( $\Delta^3 \overline{q}$ ) in Equation G.30 will degrade the scheme from 4th to 3rd order.

Constructed interface values  $(q^L, q^R)$  poses local Riemann problem, so are input for computing numerical fluxes through a HLL approximate Riemann solver, given by (Toro, 2002)

$$\Theta\left(q^{L}, q^{R}\right) = \begin{cases} \Theta\left(q^{L}\right) & \text{if } s^{L} \ge 0 \\\\ \Theta^{*}\left(q^{L}, q^{R}\right) & \text{if } s^{L} < 0 < s^{R} \\\\ \Theta\left(q^{R}\right) & \text{if } s^{R} \le 0 \end{cases}$$
(G.34)

where

$$\Theta^*\left(q^L, q^R\right) = \frac{s^R \Theta\left(q^L\right) - s^L \Theta\left(q^R\right) + s^R s^L\left(q^R - q^L\right)}{s^R - s^L} \tag{G.35}$$

The wave speeds used here are given by

$$s^{L} = \boldsymbol{u}^{L} - \sqrt{gH^{L}}\varphi^{L}, \qquad s^{R} = \boldsymbol{u}^{R} + \sqrt{gH^{R}}\varphi^{R}$$
 (G.36)

in which flux  $\varphi^{(L,R)}$  is given by

$$\varphi^{(L,R)} = \begin{cases} \sqrt{\frac{1}{2} \frac{(H_* + H^{(L,R)})H^*}{H^{(L,R)^2}}} & , & H^* > H^{(L,R)} \quad \text{(shock)} \\ & & \\ 1 & , & H^* \le H^{(L,R)} \quad \text{(rarefaction)} \end{cases}$$
(G.37)

$$H^* = \frac{1}{g} \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \left( \sqrt{gH^L} + \sqrt{gH^R} \right) + \frac{1}{4} \left( \boldsymbol{u}^L - \boldsymbol{u}^R \right) \right\}^2$$
(G.38)

The remaining terms, including higher order spatial derivatives, are differenced by the cell averaged finite volume method proposed by Lacor et al.(2003).

## Appendix H

# Second-order Sub- and Super-harmonic Solution in Two-layer Fluids

$$a_{exact}^{\pm} = \frac{\sum_{j=1}^{5} \Pi_{j}^{\pm} \Lambda_{j}^{\pm}}{Det^{\pm}}$$
(H.1)

where

$$\Pi_{1}^{\pm} = -K_{25}^{\pm}K_{33}^{\pm}K_{42}^{\pm}K_{51}^{\pm} + K_{23}^{\pm}K_{35}^{\pm}K_{42}^{\pm}K_{51}^{\pm} + K_{25}^{\pm}K_{33}^{\pm}K_{41}^{\pm}K_{52}^{\pm} - K_{23}^{\pm}K_{35}^{\pm}K_{41}^{\pm}K_{52}^{\pm}$$
(H.2)

$$\Pi_2^{\pm} = K_{15}^{\pm} K_{33}^{\pm} K_{42}^{\pm} K_{51}^{\pm} - K_{15}^{\pm} K_{33}^{\pm} K_{41}^{\pm} K_{52}^{\pm}$$
(H.3)

$$\Pi_3^{\pm} = -K_{15}^{\pm} K_{23}^{\pm} K_{42}^{\pm} K_{51}^{\pm} + K_{15}^{\pm} K_{23}^{\pm} K_{41}^{\pm} K_{52}^{\pm}$$
(H.4)

$$\Pi_4^{\pm} = K_{25}^{\pm} K_{33}^{\pm} K_{51}^{\pm} - K_{23}^{\pm} K_{35}^{\pm} K_{51}^{\pm} - K_{15}^{\pm} K_{23}^{\pm} K_{31}^{\pm} K_{52}^{\pm}$$
(H.5)

$$\Pi_5^{\pm} = -K_{25}^{\pm} K_{33}^{\pm} K_{41}^{\pm} + K_{23}^{\pm} K_{35}^{\pm} K_{41}^{\pm} + K_{15}^{\pm} K_{23}^{\pm} K_{31}^{\pm} K_{42}^{\pm}$$
(H.6)

$$\Lambda_1^{\pm} = -\frac{1}{2} \left( k^e A_e a^{i0} + k^i A_i a^{e0} \right) \tag{H.7}$$

$$\Lambda_{2}^{\pm} = -\frac{1}{2} \left( k^{e} \cosh\left(k^{e} h_{l}\right) C_{e} a^{i0} + k^{i} \cosh\left(k^{i} h_{l}\right) C_{i} a^{e0} \right)$$
(H.8)

$$\Lambda_{3}^{\pm} = \frac{1}{2} \frac{\rho_{u}}{\rho_{l}} \left\{ k^{e} \sigma^{e} B_{e} a^{i0} + k^{i} \sigma^{i} B_{i} a^{e0} + k^{e} k^{i} \left( A_{e} A_{i} \pm B_{e} B_{i} \right) \right\} \\ - \frac{1}{2} \left\{ k^{e} \sigma^{e} \sinh\left(k^{e} h_{l}\right) C_{e} a^{i0} + k^{i} \sigma^{i} \sinh\left(k^{i} h_{l}\right) C_{i} a^{e0} \\ - k^{e} k^{i} C_{e} C_{i} \cosh\left(k^{\mp} h_{l}\right) \right\}$$
(H.9)

$$\Lambda_{4}^{\pm} = -\frac{1}{2} \left[ k^{e} a^{i} \left\{ A_{e} \cosh\left(k^{e} h_{u}\right) + B_{e} \sinh\left(k^{e} h_{u}\right) \right\} + k^{i} a^{e} \left\{ A_{i} \cosh\left(k^{i} h_{u}\right) + B_{i} \sinh\left(k^{i} h_{u}\right) \right\} \right]$$
(H.10)

$$\Lambda_{5}^{\pm} = \frac{1}{2} \left[ k^{e} \sigma^{e} a^{i} \left\{ A_{e} \sinh \left( k^{e} h_{u} \right) + B_{e} \cosh \left( k^{e} h_{u} \right) \right\} \right.$$
$$\left. + k^{i} \sigma^{i} a^{e} \left\{ A_{i} \sinh \left( k^{i} h_{u} \right) + B_{i} \cosh \left( k^{i} h_{u} \right) \right\} \right.$$
$$\left. - k^{e} k^{i} a^{e} \left\{ \left( A_{e} A_{i} \mp B_{e} B_{i} \right) \cosh \left( k^{\mp} h_{u} \right) \right. \right.$$
$$\left. + \left( B_{e} A_{i} \mp B_{i} A_{e} \right) \sinh \left( k^{\mp} h_{u} \right) \right\} \right]$$
(H.11)

$$Det^{\pm} = K_{25}^{\pm} K_{33}^{\pm} K_{44}^{\pm} K_{51}^{\pm} - K_{23}^{\pm} K_{35}^{\pm} K_{44}^{\pm} K_{51}^{\pm} - K_{15}^{\pm} K_{23}^{\pm} K_{31}^{\pm} K_{44}^{\pm} K_{52}^{\pm} - K_{25}^{\pm} K_{33}^{\pm} K_{41}^{\pm} K_{54}^{\pm} + K_{23}^{\pm} K_{35}^{\pm} K_{41}^{\pm} K_{54}^{\pm} + K_{15}^{\pm} K_{23}^{\pm} K_{31}^{\pm} K_{42}^{\pm} K_{54}^{\pm}$$
(H.12)

Variables  $A_i, B_i, C_i, a_i$  and  $K_{ij}^{\pm}$  are,

$$A_{i} = \frac{a^{i0}}{\sigma^{i}} \left[ g \left( 1 - \frac{\rho_{l}}{\rho_{u}} \right) + \frac{\rho_{l} \left( \sigma^{i} \right)^{2}}{\rho_{u} k^{i} \tanh(k^{i} h_{l})} \right]$$
(H.13)

$$B_i = \frac{\sigma^i a^{i0}}{k^i} \tag{H.14}$$

$$C_i = \frac{\sigma^i a^{i0}}{k^i \sinh(k^i h_l)} \tag{H.15}$$

$$a_i = \frac{\left(\sigma^i\right)^2 a^{i0}}{\left(\sigma^i\right)^2 \cosh(k^i h_u) - gk^i \sinh(k^i h_u)} \tag{H.16}$$

and

$$K_{15}^{\pm} = \sigma^{\pm}/k^{\pm}, \quad K_{23}^{\pm} = \sinh\left(k^{\pm}h_{l}\right), \quad K_{25}^{\pm} = \sigma^{\pm}/k^{\pm},$$

$$K_{31}^{\pm} = -\sigma^{\pm}\rho_{l}/\rho_{u}, \quad K_{33}^{\pm} = \sigma^{\pm}\cosh\left(k^{\pm}h_{l}\right), \quad K_{35}^{\pm} = g\left(\rho_{l}/\rho_{u} - 1\right),$$

$$K_{41}^{\pm} = \sinh\left(k^{\pm}h_{u}\right), \quad K_{42}^{\pm} = \cosh\left(k^{\pm}h_{u}\right), \quad K_{44}^{\pm} = \sigma^{\pm}/k^{\pm}$$

$$K_{51}^{\pm} = -\sigma^{\pm}\cosh\left(k^{\pm}h_{u}\right), \quad K_{52}^{\pm} = -\sigma^{\pm}\sinh\left(k^{\pm}h_{u}\right), \quad K_{54}^{\pm} = g \qquad (\text{H.17})$$

Similarly,  $A_e, B_e, C_e, a_e$  can be expressed.